Contents
A - Z

THE BMW 1 SERIES.
OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.

1 Series

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

BMW recommends *Castrol*

Contents

The quickest way to find special topics is to consult the index, refer to page .

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Manual easy to find. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Updates after press date

Updates after press date for the Owner's Manuals, when necessary, are issued as appendices to the printed Quick Reference Guide for the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g. on technical aspects, can also be found on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

▷ Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.

♻ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

ⓘ Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all series-specific equipment, country-specific equipment, and optional equipment that is offered in the series. For this reason, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates some equipment that may not be available in your vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected.

This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

If equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Manual, please consult the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Handbooks.

Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases that features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

Updates after press date

Updates after press date for the Owner's Manuals, when necessary, are issued as appendices to the printed Quick Reference Guide for the vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and powerful electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. You should therefore have the corresponding work on your vehicle performed only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.

When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Original BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.

BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.

BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants.

Original BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.

Installation and operation of accessories not approved by BMW, such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radio or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive

repair establishment or individual using any cer-
tified automotive part. ◄

California Proposition 65 warning

California law requires us to issue the following
warning:

⚠ Engine exhaust and a wide variety of
automobile components and parts,
including components found in the interior fur-
nishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals
known to the State of California to cause cancer
and birth defects and reproductive harm. In
addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and
certain products of component wear contain or
emit chemicals known to the State of California
to cause cancer and birth defects or other
reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accesso-
ries contain lead and lead compounds. Wash
your hands after handling.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have
caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always
protect your skin by washing thoroughly with
soap and water. ◄

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication
thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warran-
ties:

▷   New Vehicle Limited Warranty

▷   Rust Perforation Limited Warranty

▷   Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty

▷   Federal Emissions Performance Warranty

▷   California Emission Control System Limited
Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is
listed in the Service and Warranty Information
Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and
Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and
designed to meet the particular operating con-
ditions and registration requirements in your
country and continental region in order to
deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle
is operated under those conditions. If you wish
to operate your vehicle in another country or
region, you may be required to adapt your vehi-
cle to meet different prevailing operating condi-
tions and registration requirements. You should
also be aware of any applicable warranty limita-
tions or exclusions for such country or region. In
such case, please contact Customer Relations
for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the
road safety, operational reliability and the New
Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance mea-
sures:

▷   BMW Maintenance system

▷   Service and Warranty Information Booklet
for US models

▷   Service and Warranty Information Booklet
for US models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Data memory

A variety of electronic components in your vehicle include data storage devices, which store technical information on the condition of your vehicle, events and errors, either temporarily or permanently. In general, this technical information documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or the surroundings:

▷ Operating conditions of system components, e.g., fill levels.

▷ Status messages regarding the vehicle and of its individual components, such as wheel rpm/vehicle speed, response delay, lateral acceleration.

▷ Malfunctions and defects in the major system components, such as the lights and brakes.

▷ Responses of the vehicle in special driving situations, such as the deployment of an airbag, the utilization of stability control systems.

▷ Environmental conditions, such as temperature.

These data are exclusively of a technical nature and are used for the detection and correction of errors, as well as the optimization of vehicle functions. Motion profiles of traveled routes can not be deduced from these data. If services are required, such as repair services, service processes, warranty claims and quality assurance, then this technical information can be read out by employees of service departments, including the manufacturer, from the event and error data storage devices by using special diagnostic equipment. There, if necessary, you will receive further information. After remedying an error, the information in the error memory is deleted or progressively overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations are conceivable in which this technical data, in conjunction with other information, such as accident reports, vehicle damage, witness statements, etc. - possibly with the assistance of an expert - could be traced to particular individuals.

Additional functions that are agreed upon contractually with the customer, such as vehicle tracking in case of emergency, permit the transmission of certain vehicle data from the vehicle.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your center, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

Dashboard

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel: Controls and displays

1 Convertible: opening and closing windows jointly 42

2 Convertible: opening and closing rear windows 42

3 Opening and closing front windows 41

4 Exterior mirrors folding in and out 56

5 Adjusting exterior mirrors, automatic curb monitor 56

6 Parking lamps 101

Low beams 102

Automatic headlamp control 101
Adaptive Light Control 102
High-beam Assistant 103

7 Fog lamps 104

8 Turn signals 71

High beams, headlamp flasher 103

High-beam Assistant 103

Roadside parking lamps 103

BC Computer 77

Settings and information about the vehicle 79

9 Instrument cluster 14

10 Windshield wipers 71

Rain sensor 72

11 START STOP ENGINE Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 61

12 Ignition lock 61

13 Buttons on the steering wheel

Telephone:

Accepting and ending a call; dialing the selected phone number; redialing if no phone number is selected

Convertible: microphone on steering column

Volume

Activating/deactivating the voice activation system 26

Convertible: microphone on steering column

Changing the radio station
Interrupting a traffic bulletin
Selecting a music track
Scrolling through the redial list

Next entertainment source

Recirculated air mode 109

14 Steering wheel heating 57

15 Horn, entire surface

16 Adjusting the steering wheel 57

17 Cruise control 73

18 Releasing the hood 233

19 Opening the trunk lid 37

Instrument cluster

1 Speedometer
135i: with fuel gauge

2 Indicator lamps for turn signals

3 Indicator and warning lamps   15

4 Tachometer   76

5 Fuel gauge   76
135i: engine oil temperature   76

6 Display for

   ▷ Clock   75

   ▷ Outside temperature   75

   ▷ Indicator and warning lamps   84

7 Display for

   ▷ Position of automatic transmission   64

   ▷ Gear indicator of 7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch   66

   ▷ Computer   77

   ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining distance to be driven   80

   ▷ Odometer and trip odometer   75

   ▷ High-beam Assistant   103

   ▷ Checking the oil level   233

   ▷ Settings and information   79

8 Resetting the trip odometer   75

Indicator and warning lamps

The concept

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages

You can call up more information on the Control Display, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control, refer to page 84.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps notify you that certain functions are active:

≡▷	High beams/headlamp flasher	103
≢▷	Fog lamps	104
🚗	Lamp flashes: DSC or DTC is regulating the propulsive forces in order to maintain driving stability	91
((!))	Canada: parking brake applied	63
BRAKE	Parking brake applied	63
⌁	Canada: engine malfunction with adverse effect on emissions	238
SERVICE ENGINE SOON	Engine malfunction with adverse effect on emissions	238

Around the center console: Controls and displays

1 Control Display   19

2 Driving stability control systems
  ▷ Dynamic Stability Control DSC   90
  ▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC   91

3 Hazard warning flashers

4 Central locking system   36

5 Automatic climate control

![windshield icon] Air distribution to the windshield   108

![upper body icon] Air distribution to the upper body area   108

![footwell icon] Air distribution to the footwell   108

AUTO   Automatic air distribution and flow rate   108

A/C   Cooling function   110

![AUC icon] Automatic recirculated air control AUC and recirculated air mode   109

MAX A/C   Maximum cooling   108

ALL   ALL program   109

![air volume icon] Air volume   109

<table>
<tr><td>🔳</td><td>Defrosting windows   110</td></tr>
<tr><td>🔳</td><td>Rear window defroster   110</td></tr>
<tr><td>🔳</td><td>Seat heating   54</td></tr>
</table>

6 CD/DVD drive   165

7 Programmable memory keys   24

8 Changing
  ▷ Radio station   157
  ▷ Track   165

9 ◢▭ Convertible: open convertible top   45

  ◩ Convertible: close convertible top   45

10 Controller   19
Can be turned, pressed, or moved in four directions

11 Buttons on the controller   20
Selecting menus directly

12 Switching entertainment audio sources on/off and adjusting volume   154

13 Ejecting a CD/DVD   165

Around the roofliner

Coupe

1 Microphone for voice activation system and for telephone in hands-free mode

2 SOS: sending an Emergency Request 251

3 Reading lamps 106

4 Glass roof, electric 43

5 Interior lamps 105

6 Passenger airbag status lamp 99

Convertible

1 SOS: sending an Emergency Request 251

2 Reading lamps 106

3 Interior lamps 105

4 Passenger airbag status lamp 99

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

The concept

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a single central position.

⚠️ Make entries only when traffic and road conditions permit; otherwise, you may endanger vehicle occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

Controls at a glance

Controls

1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons
You can use the buttons to open the menus

directly. The controller can be used to select the menu items and create settings.

▷ Move in four directions, arrows **3**

▷ Turn, arrow 4

▷ Push, arrow 5

Control Display

Notes
▷ Follow care instructions when cleaning the Control Display.
▷ Do not store items in the region in front of the Control Display; doing so may damage the Control Display.

Switching off

1. [OPTION] Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"

Switching on
Press the controller to switch on.

Buttons on the controller

Symbol	Function
MENU	Open the main menu
RADIO	Open the Radio menu
MEDIA	Open the CD/Multimedia menu
NAV	Start navigation in map view
TEL	Open the Telephone menu
BACK	Show previous panel
OPTION	Open the Options menu

Operating principle

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, refer to page 61, the following message is displayed on the Control Display:

To hide the message:
Press the controller.
The main menu is displayed.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Opening the main menu

[MENU] Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item
The menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, the menu items that should be selected are depicted in quotation marks, e.g. "Settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g. "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

▷ Move the controller to the left.

The current panel is closed and the previous panel is displayed.
Pressing the BACK button reopens the previous panel. This does not close the current panel.

▷ Move the controller to the right.

A new panel is opened and laid over it.

White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

View of an opened menu

When you open a menu, generally the panel last selected in this menu is displayed. To display the first panel of the menu:

▷ Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.

▷ Press the menu's button twice on the controller.

Open the Options menu

 Press the button.
The "Options" menu is displayed.

Another possibility: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu appears.

Options menu

The "Options" menu is composed of different areas:

▷ Screen settings, e.g. "Split screen".

The region remains unchanged.

▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g. "Radio".

▷ Other control options for the selected menu, e.g. "Store station".

Adjusting settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.

3. Press the controller to confirm the setting.

Activating/deactivating functions

Some menu items are preceded by a check box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ The function is activated.

☐ The function is deactivated.

Example: setting the clock

1. MENU Press the button.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".

4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status box

The status box at the top right displays the following information:

▷ Time
▷ Current entertainment source
▷ Sound output ON/OFF
▷ Mobile phone network with strongest reception
▷ Telephone status
▷ Traffic reports reception

Status box symbols

The symbols are divided into separate groups.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
TI	Traffic bulletins switched on
HD	HD radio switched on
🛰	Satellite radio switched on

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
📞	Incoming or outgoing call
📵	Missed call
📶	Reception strength of mobile phone network Symbol flashing: network search
📶	No mobile phone network available
🔵	Bluetooth switched on
▲	Roaming active
✉	Receiving text message, email
📇	Checking SIM card
🔒	SIM card blocked
🚫	SIM card missing
📲	Entering PIN

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
💿	CD/DVD player
💾	Music collection
🎵 gracenote	Gracenote® database
✏	AUX-IN port
🔌	USB audio interface
📱	Music interface for smartphones

Other

Symbol	Meaning
🔇	Voice instructions are switched off
🚗	Querying current vehicle position

With the Professional navigation system: Split screen

General information

Additional information, e.g. from the computer, can be displayed on the right side of the split screen.

This information remains visible on the split screen even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

1. [OPTION] Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting display

1. [OPTION] Press the button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.

Programmable memory keys

General information

iDrive functions can be stored on the program-mable memory keys and called up directly, e.g. radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Storing functions

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for longer than two seconds.

Executing a function

1 ... 6 Press the button.

The function is executed immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying memory key assignments

Touch the button with a finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

▷ Displaying brief information: press the but-ton.

▷ Displaying detailed information: press and hold the button.

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select the letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm entry.

Symbol	Function
⟻	Press the controller: delete one letter or number
⟻	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers
␣	Enter a blank space

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
$A^B{}_C$	Entering letters
$1^@{}_+$	Entering numbers

Switching between uppercase and lowercase letters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering uppercase letters and lower-case letters:

Symbol	Function
▲ abc	Move the controller toward the front: to switch from uppercase letters to lower-case letters
▲ ABC	Move the controller toward the front: to switch from low-ercase letters to uppercase letters

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

The entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

▷ During entry, only letters for which there are data are offered.

▷ Destination search: town/city names can be entered with the spelling used in any of the languages available on the Control Display.

Voice activation system

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

The concept

▷ The voice activation system can be used to control most functions by spoken commands.

▷ Functions that can only used when the vehicle is stopped cannot be operated using the voice activation system.

▷ The system includes a special microphone on the driver's side.

▷ In the Owner's Manual, ›...‹ indicates commands for the voice activation system.

▷ In the Owner's Manual, ››...‹‹ indicates the answers from the voice activation system.

Prerequisite

On the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system to permit identification of the commands to be spoken.

Setting the language, refer to page 87.

Saying commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.

 This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal notify you that the voice activation system is activated.

If no additional commands are possible, continue by operating the function via iDrive.

Finishing voice input

Press the button on the steering wheel or

 ›Cancel‹

Possible commands

Most menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands.

The available commands depend on which menu is currently selected on the Control Display.

There are short commands for functions of the main menu.

Some list entries such as phone book entries can also be selected using the voice activation system. Make sure to say list entries the same way as they appear in the respective list.

Having the possible commands read aloud

To have the available commands read aloud:

 ›Voice commands‹

For example, if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands relating to settings are read aloud.

Performing functions using short commands

Functions from the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, essentially regardless of which menu item is selected, e.g. ›Vehicle status‹.

List of short command of the voice activation system, refer to page 263.

Help dialog for voice activation system

Accessing help:

›Help‹

Other commands for the help dialog:

▷ ›Help with examples‹: information about the current control options and the most important commands relating to them are read aloud.

▷ ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle operation of the voice activation system is read aloud.

Example: playing back a CD

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the ▒▒ button on the steering wheel.
3. ›C D and multimedia‹

    The system plays the last media played.
4. ›C D track …‹ e.g. CD track 4.

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system uses the standard dialog or a short version.

In the short version of the voice dialog, the responses from the system are given in abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select a setting.

Adjusting volume

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instruction to select the desired volume.

▷ The volume remains the same, even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 251, in the vicinity of the interior rearview mirror.

Ambient conditions

▷ Say the commands, numbers and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis and speed.

▷ Always speak the commands in the language of the voice activation system.

▷ When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name: ›Station …‹ e.g. National Public Radio

▷ Keep the doors, windows, glass roof/panoramic glass roof closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.

▷ Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Remote control

Each remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Use each remote control at least twice a year for longer road trips in order to maintain the batteries' charge status. In cars with Comfort Access, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 41.

The settings called up and implemented when the car is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the car, refer to Personal Profile, next column.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in the remote control, page 237.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

▷   Driver's door, refer to page 36

▷   Convertible: glove compartment, refer to page 116

New remote controls

Your BMW center can supply new remote controls with integrated keys as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set many of your BMW's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences. Without any action on your part, Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car, the remote control used for the purpose is recognized and the settings stored for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your personal settings will be activated for you, even if in the meantime your car was used by someone else with another remote control and the corresponding settings. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls. They are stored

for two remote controls if Comfort Access is in use.

Personal Profile settings

For more information on specific settings, refer to the specified pages.

▷ Programming the Programmable memory keys, refer to page 24

▷ Response of the central locking system when the car is unlocked, refer to page 34

▷ Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 36

▷ Automatic call-up of the driver's seat position, refer to page 54

▷ Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 71

▷ Settings for the display on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster:

    ▷ 12h/24h format of the clock, refer to page 82

    ▷ Date format, refer to page 84

    ▷ Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 87

    ▷ Language of the Control Display, refer to page 87

    ▷ Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining distances, and temperature, refer to page 80

▷ Show visual warning for Park Distance Control PDC, refer to page 89

▷ Light settings:

    ▷ Welcome lamps, refer to page 102

    ▷ Pathway lighting, refer to page 102

    ▷ Daytime running lights, refer to page 102

    ▷ High-beam Assistant, refer to page 103

▷ Automatic climate control: activating/deactivating AUTO program, cooling function and automatic recirculated air control, setting temperature, air volume and distribution, refer to page 108 ff

▷ Entertainment:

    ▷ Tone control, refer to page 155

    ▷ Speed-dependent volume control, refer to page 156

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

▷ Doors

▷ Trunk lid

▷ Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

▷ Via the remote control

▷ Using the door lock

▷ In cars with Comfort Access, via the handles on the driver's door or the front passenger door

At the same time as locking and unlocking via the remote control:

▷ Welcome lights, the interior light, and the courtesy lighting are switched on or off.

▷ Alarm system, refer to page 38, is armed or disarmed.

Operating from inside

By means of the button for central locking, refer to page 36.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using the remote control

⚠️ Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

▷ Convertible: to operate the convertible top with the remote control, the doors and trunk lid must be closed and the trunk partition must be folded down and engaged on both sides. Refer also to page 46.◀

Unlocking

Press the 🔓 button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lighting of the doors, and the welcome lamps come on.

Setting unlocking characteristics

You can set whether only the driver's door or the entire vehicle is to be unlocked when the button is pressed for the first time.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button"

4. Select a menu item:
   ▷ "All doors"
      Press the 🔓 button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   ▷ "Driver's door only"
      Pressing the 🔓 button once unlocks the driver's door and fuel filler flap.

Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.

5. Press the controller.

Coupe: convenient opening

Press and hold the 🔓 button.
The windows and the glass roof are opened.

Convertible: convenient opening

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to open the convertible top and windows.

Hold the 🔓 button down.
The windows and the convertible top are opened provided that the doors are closed.

If you continue pressing the 🔓 button, the windows move up.

⚠️ Watch during the opening process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the button interrupts the opening process.◀

Locking

Press the 🔒 LOCK button.

⚠️ Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there is any person inside, because the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◀

Convertible: convenient closing

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to close the convertible top and windows.

Press and hold the 🔒 LOCK button.
The convertible top and the windows are closed.

⚠️ Watch during the closing process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the button interrupts the closing process.◀

Switching on interior lamps

While the car is locked:
Press the 🔒 LOCK button.

You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Unlocking the trunk lid

Press the ▧ button for about 1 second and then release it.

The trunk lid opens a short distance, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

▷ The trunk lid swings backward and up when opened. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To avoid locking yourself out by accident, do not place the remote control in the trunk.
A previously locked trunk lid is locked again after closing.
Before and after each trip, check that the trunk lid has not been inadvertently unlocked. ◄

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"

4. Press the controller.

Calling up the driver's seat position

The driver's seat position last set is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can select whether or not the seat is reset to that position automatically.

⚠ When this Personal Profile function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is free of obstacles.

Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects as a result of a rearward movement of the seat. ◄

The adjusting procedure is halted when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Selecting automatic call-up

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position auto."

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.

Coupe: in vehicles without Comfort Access, only the driver's door can be locked and unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is discharged. Use the remote control on an extended trip to recharge the battery, refer to page 32. The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that may have to be changed, refer to page 41.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communications

Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device must not cause harmful interference, and

▷ This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

▷ Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◄

Opening and closing: Using the door lock

You can set the way in which the car is unlocked, refer to page 34.

⚠ Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there is any person inside, because the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◄

Coupe:Without Comfort Access the alarm system is triggered if unlocking occurs via the door lock.
To switch off the alarm:
Unlock the vehicle using the remote control,

refer to page 34, or insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.◄

Further details of the alarm system, refer to page 38.

Coupe

▷ Without Comfort Access, only the driver's door is locked via the door lock.◄

To lock both doors, the fuel filler flap and the trunk lid together:

1. With the doors closed, lock the vehicle using the button for the central locking system in the interior, refer to page 36.

2. Unlock and open the driver's or front passenger door, refer to page 37.

3. Lock the vehicle.

   ▷ Lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock, or

   ▷ Press down the lock button of the front passenger door and close the door from the outside.

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can lock and unlock the driver's door by turning the integrated key to the corresponding limit positions in the door lock.

Opening and closing: From inside

This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the trunk lid, but does not activate the anti-theft

system. Depending on its embodiment, the fuel filler flap can be unlocked as needed.

Automatic locking

You can also set the situations in which the car locks:

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
    ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
       The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle after a short time if no door has been opened.
    ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
       The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you begin to drive.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

▷ Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or

▷ Pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or

▷ Press down the safety lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠️ Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside. ◀

Trunk lid

▷ In order to avoid damage, make sure there is sufficient clearance before opening the trunk lid. ◀

Opening from inside

Press the button: the trunk lid opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside

Press the button, see arrow, or the 🔲 button on the remote control for a longer period. The trunk lid opens slightly and can be swung upward.

Locking or unlocking separately

The switch is located in the glove compartment.

1   Locking the trunk lid
2   Unlocking the trunk lid

Locking separately

Push the switch in the direction of arrow 1.

The trunk lid is locked and cannot be unlocked using the central locking system.

If you give the remote control without the integrated key to someone else while the glove compartment is locked, the trunk lid cannot be opened. This is an advantage when valet parking, for example. Locking the glove compartment, refer to page 116.

Unlocking separately

Push the switch in the direction of arrow 2.

Emergency release

Pull the lever in the trunk. The trunk lid is unlocked.

Closing

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the trunk lid make it easier to pull down.

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the trunk lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

▷   When a door, the hood or the trunk lid is opened

▷   To movements inside the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 39

▷   When the car's inclination changes, e.g. if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away: tilt alarm sensor, refer to page 39

▷   When there has been an interruption of power supply from the battery

Depending on the market-specific version, the alarm system briefly signals unauthorized entry attempts by:

▷   An acoustic alarm

▷   Switching on the hazard warning flashers

Arming and disarming

General information

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Door lock with armed alarm system

In some national-market versions, unlocking via the door lock triggers the alarm.

To switch off this alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition.

Trunk lid with the alarm system armed

The trunk lid can be opened via the remote control even when the alarm system is armed.

Press the ▨ button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The trunk lid is locked and monitored again as soon as it is closed.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the ▨ button for at least three seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching off an alarm

▷ Unlock the car with the remote control, refer to page , or

▷ Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp on inside mirror

▷ The indicator lamp flashes continuously: The system is armed.

▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking: The doors, hood, or trunk lid are not properly closed, the remaining components are secured.
Then the indicator lamp flashes continu-

ously after approx. 10 seconds. The interior motion sensor and tilt sensor are not active.

▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: The vehicle has not been tampered with.

▷ If the indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
The vehicle has been tampered with.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, for example to attempts to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle.

Interior motion sensor

Coupe

For proper function, the windows and glass sunroof must be closed.

Convertible

The interior of the car is monitored up to the height of the seat cushions. This way, the anti-theft alarm system including the interior motion sensor are armed, even if the convertible top is open. Falling objects, e.g. tree leaves, may trigger a false alarm, refer to Avoiding false alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt sensor and interior motion sensor can be deactivated together, for example in the following situations:

▷ In car washes

▷ In stacking garages

▷ During transport on car-carrying trains, boats/ships or on a trailer

▷ When leaving animals in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Once the vehicle is locked, press the 🌐 LOCK button on the remote control again within approx. 10 seconds.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then begins flashing again. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort Access

The concept
It is possible to access the vehicle without actuating the remote control. It is sufficient to have the remote control with you, for example in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the remote control in the vicinity or in the passenger compartment.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

▷ Unlocking/locking the vehicle

▷ Convenient closing

▷ Unlocking the trunk lid separately

▷ Engine starting

Functional requirement

▷ There are no external sources of interference in the vicinity.

▷ The remote control must be outside the vehicle to lock it.

▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

▷ It is only possible to start the engine if the remote control is inside the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control
The above functions can be controlled by pressing the remote control buttons or by using Comfort Access.

▷ If you notice a brief delay while opening or closing windows, the glass roof or the convertible top, the system is checking whether a remote control is inside the vehicle. Please

repeat the opening or closing procedure, if necessary.◀

Unlocking

Grasp the handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely, arrow **1**.

This corresponds to pressing the ⬚ button.

Locking
Touch the surface on the door handle, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the ⬚ LOCK button.

▷ To preserve the battery, please make sure that the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.◀

Coupe: convenient closing
Keep pressing the surface, arrow **2**, with your finger.

Convertible: window and convertible top operation
With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, you can open and close the windows and the convertible top when a remote control is located inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the trunk lid separately
Press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

This corresponds to pressing the ⬚ button.

▷ If the vehicle detects that a remote control has been accidentally left inside the

locked vehicle after the trunk lid is closed, the lid will reopen. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches on radio readiness.

Do not depress the brake or the clutch; otherwise, the engine will start immediately.

Starting the engine

The engine can be started or the ignition can be switched on when a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert a remote control into the ignition lock, refer to page 61.

Switching off the engine in cars with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off when the selector lever is in position P, refer to page 63. To switch the engine off when the selector lever is in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition lock.

Malfunctions

Local radio waves can interfere with the function of Comfort Access, for example when a mobile phone is in the immediate vicinity of the remote control or by when a mobile phone is being charged in the vehicle.

If this happens, open and close the vehicle via the buttons on the remote control or using the integrated key. To start the engine afterward, insert the remote control into the ignition lock.

Warning lamps

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when you attempt to start the engine: the engine cannot be started. The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is malfunctioning. Take the remote control with you inside the vehicle or have it checked. If necessary, insert another remote control into the ignition lock.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up while the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle. After the engine is switched off, the engine can only be restarted within approx. 10 seconds.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the battery in the remote control.

Replacing the battery

The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that will need to be replaced from time to time.

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control, refer to page 32.

2. Remove the cover.

3. Insert the new battery with the plus side facing up.

4. Press the cover on to close.

Dispose of the old battery at a recycling center or at your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, watch the windows while closing them.
Take the remote control out of the ignition when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves.◀

Coupe: opening, closing

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point:
The window opens as long as you press the switch.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Convertible: opening, closing

Window operation with Comfort Access, also refer to page .

⚠ To close the side windows while driving, either close the rear windows first or all four windows together; otherwise, the windows may not close tightly at high speeds.◀

Individually

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point:
The window opens as long as you press the switch.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch. The rear windows cannot be closed automatically.

Jointly

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point:
All windows open as long as you press the switch.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
All windows open automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

▷ Pull the switch:
All windows close as long as you pull the switch.

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the windows for approx. 1 minute as long as no door has been opened.

Convenient opening and closing

For Convenient opening and closing using the remote control, refer to page . For Convenient closing using Comfort Access, refer to Locking on page .

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a power window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

⚠️ Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the window's travel path prior to closing it; otherwise, the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories that might interfere with window movement. Otherwise, the pinch protection system could be impaired. Convertible: the rear windows are not equipped with pinch protection. Therefore, watch them closely when closing to avoid personal injury.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, or if ice on the windows, etc., prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there. Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.

2. Pull the switch again past the resistance point within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there. The window closes without pinch protection.

Coupe: glass roof, electric

⚠️ To prevent injuries, watch the glass roof while closing it.
Take the remote control with you when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves.◀

Tilting

Press the switch.

▷ The closed glass roof is tilted and the sliding visor opens slightly.

⚠️ Do not close the sliding visor forcibly with the roof in the tilted position, as this would damage the mechanism.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Push the switch rearward to the resistance point.
The glass roof and the sliding visor open together as long as you hold the switch in this position.

▷ Push the switch rearward past the resistance point.
The glass roof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the glass roof in a similar manner by pressing the switch forwards. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For Convenient opening and closing using the remote control, refer to page 34. For Convenient closing using Comfort Access, refer to Locking on page 40.

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the roof for approx. 1 minute as long as no door has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the glass roof encounters an obstruction dur-
ing closing from approximately the middle of
the opening in the roof, or during closing from
the tilted position, the closing movement is
interrupted and the glass roof is opened again
slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system
check and clear the roof's travel path prior
to closing it; otherwise, the safety system might
fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such
as very thin objects, and the roof would con-
tinue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, press the switch
forward past the resistance point and hold it
there. The roof closes without pinch protection.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power failure, there is a possibility that
the glass roof can only be tilted. The system
must be initialized. BMW recommends having
this work performed at your BMW center.

Convertible: convertible top

The fully automatic top combines reliable
weather protection with simple and easy-to-
use operation.

The following tips will enhance your driving
pleasure in your Convertible:

▷ It is recommended that you close the con-
vertible top whenever the vehicle is parked.
The closed convertible top not only pro-
tects the vehicle interior from damage due
to unforeseen bad weather, but also pro-
vides a certain degree of protection against
theft. However, even when the top is
closed, valuables should only be stored in
the locked trunk.

▷ Do not mount any roof rack systems on the
convertible top.

▷ If the top is opened while it is wet, e.g. after
driving in the rain, water may drip into the
trunk. If necessary, remove items from the
trunk beforehand to avoid water stains or
soiling.

⚠ At temperatures below +14 ℉ /–10 ℃, do
not move the convertible top as this could
result in damage.
Do not keep the convertible top in the convert-
ible top box for longer than one day if it is wet;
otherwise, the moisture may cause damage.
Do not place objects on the convertible top, as
otherwise they may fall off when you operate
the convertible top and cause damage or injury.
Never move the convertible top when the roll-
over protection system is in the activated posi-
tion.
Always completely finish the operation of the
convertible top. Driving with the convertible top
incompletely opened or closed can result in
damage or injury.
Do not reach into the mechanism during the
opening or closing procedure. Keep children
away from the opening/closing path of the con-
vertible top.
For safety reasons, only operate the convertible
top while the vehicle is standing.◀

⚠ While opening and closing, the convert-
ible top pivots upward. When operating
the convertible top in a garage, under a bridge,
etc., ensure that there are at least 6.5 ft/2 m of
headroom; otherwise, the vehicle may be dam-
aged.◀

Before opening and closing

▷ Comply with the safety precautions
described above.

▷ Ensure that the trunk partition is folded
down and engaged on both sides, refer to
page 119; otherwise, it will not be possible
to open the convertible top.

▷ Ensure that the cargo does not press
against the trunk partition from below.

▷ Ensure that the trunk lid is closed.

Opening and closing

Convertible top operation with Comfort Access, also refer to page .

As of radio readiness, refer to page :

▷ To conserve battery power, if possible operate the convertible top only while the engine is running.
Prior to closing the convertible top, check for and remove all debris from the windshield frame; otherwise, the closing of the top may be hampered.◀

1 Push button: close the convertible top

2 Push button: open convertible top

3 LEDs

▷ The side windows move down when the convertible top is opened.◀

If it is no longer possible to operate the cover after it has been actuated several times in immediate succession or after the cover has remained in an intermediate position for a longer period, then the convertible top drive has overheated.
If possible, close the convertible top and allow the drive unit to cool for a few minutes.

Operating while driving

You can open or close the convertible top while driving, as long as the car is not moving faster than approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

If you accelerate to over 30 mph/50 km/h while the convertible top is moving, the procedure is interrupted.

⚠ While operating the convertible top, pay close attention to the surrounding traffic;

otherwise, an accident may happen. Try to avoid operating the convertible top while reversing the vehicle since the rear view is very limited during the convertible top's movement. Do not operate the convertible top while driving in windy conditions. Do not drive faster than 30 mph/50 km/h; otherwise, damage to the vehicle can occur.◀

LEDs

▷ While the convertible top is being operated, the left LED lights up green. It goes out as soon as the top is fully opened or closed.

In the following situations, a message appears on the Control Display or an acoustic signal sounds in addition to the LED lighting up:

▷ If the right-hand LED flashes red when you release the button, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.

▷ If the right-hand LED lights up red when the button is pressed, the trunk partition is raised, the trunk lid is not closed or there is a malfunction. The convertible top cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the button for the convertible top operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pushing or pulling the buttons.

If the opening or closing procedure is inter-rupted for an extended period, the convertible top remains in the raised position for approx. 10 minutes and then slowly moves to a stable position.

⚠ A convertible top which is not completely open or closed is hazardous.◀

▷ If the convertible top is not fully opened or closed, the trunk lid cannot be opened and the windows cannot be moved.◀

Convenient opening and closing using the remote control

Refer to page .

Closing manually

⚠ Only close the convertible top manually if it is absolutely necessary. Never open it manually. The convertible top box cover cannot be locked if there is an electrical defect and would then open while the vehicle is in motion. Incorrect handling can result in damage.◀

Closing the convertible top manually should be performed by two people. The rear seats must not be occupied.

Only move the convertible top and the convertible top box cover when the ignition is switched off.

Before closing

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Take the screwdriver out of the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 244.

3. If the convertible top box cover is locked, release the two buttons in the trunk, arrows **1**, using the screwdriver and pull forcefully all the way out. The convertible top box cover is unlocked.
4. Close the trunk lid. After manually releasing the convertible top box cover, it is no longer possible to open the trunk lid.
5. Switch off ignition.

Closing

1. Slide the protective cap, arrow **2**, forward.
2. Slowly and smoothly open the convertible top box cover all the way, arrow **3**.

3. The locking pins must have engaged completely. If they are still visible: close the convertible top box cover as far as necessary until the locking bolts engage audibly, then slowly open the cover. During this process, do not close the convertible top box cover completely.

4. Lift out the front part of the convertible top, arrows **4**, on both sides and swing it forward. At the same time keep the convertible top box cover from closing, e.g. using your shoulder.

5. Position the rear convertible top frame upright, arrow **5**, and close the convertible top box cover, arrow **6**. Then lower the rear convertible top frame.

6. Together with another person, press down the front convertible top frame from the outside and on both sides as far as possible.

7. Carefully remove the cover in the center of the front convertible top frame using a pointed object.
Take the allen wrench out of the onboard literature pouch.

8. Attach the handle of the screwdriver to the allen wrench and insert the wrench into the opening provided.

9. Turn the allen wrench all the way to the left, arrow 7, until the front convertible top frame is locked to the windshield frame. The rear convertible top frame is automatically pressed down onto the convertible top box cover and is sealed tight under tension.

⚠️ The closing procedure must be fully completed; otherwise, injury or damage may occur.◄

Please contact your BMW center to have the cause of the malfunction eliminated.

Wind deflector

With the convertible top open, the wind deflector keeps air movement in the passenger compartment to a minimum, thus providing you with a more pleasant drive, even at higher speeds.

Installation

1. Remove the wind deflector from the protective cover and unfold it, arrows **1**.

2. Press together the top and bottom parts of the wind deflector until the catch engages, arrow 2.

3. Position both locking pins of one side at the openings provided for them.

4. Press the wind deflector into the openings, arrows **3**, overcoming the tension in the springs, and push the free locking pin in the same direction, arrow **4**.

5. Position the free locking pins at the corresponding openings and let the spring ten-

sion lock the wind deflector in place,
arrow **5**.

6. Fold up the top section of the wind deflec-
    tor, arrow **6**.

⚠️ With the wind deflector installed: do not
recline the front-seat backrests too far if
the seat is to be slid all the way back, as this
would damage the wind deflector.◀

Removing the wind deflector

Proceed in the reverse order as used for instal-
lation.

Folding

Slide the red release lever towards the middle of
the wind deflector and push the two halves
apart.

Adjustments

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. As a result, some equipment described may not be available in a particular vehicle, for example due to the options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In conjunction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 58.

Airbags

⚠️ Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off.
No one and nothing should come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. not resting feet or legs on the dashboard; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag deploys.
Make sure that passengers keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not lean

against the cover of the head airbag; otherwise, serious injuries can result if the airbag deploys.◀

Even if you follow all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 98.

Head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

⚠️ Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its center is at approx. ear level. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 52.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has four seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

⚠️ Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt in the lap area sits low across the hips and does not press against the abdomen.
The safety belt must not rest against the throat, run across sharp edges, pass over hard or fragile objects or be pinched. Fasten the safety belt so that it sits as snugly as possible against the lap and shoulder without being twisted. Otherwise, the belt could slide over your hips and

injure your abdomen in the event of a frontal collision. Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut; otherwise, its restraining effect could be impaired.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 55.

Seats

Note before adjusting

⚠ Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
On the front passenger seat as well, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven; otherwise, there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Comply with the instructions on head restraint height on page 52, and on damaged safety belts on page 56.

Manual adjustment

⚠ Observe the adjustment instructions above to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Longitudinal direction

Pull lever **1** and slide the seat to the desired position.
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Height

Pull lever **2** and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest

Pull lever **3** and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Angle

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Thigh support

Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.

Electrical adjustment

⚠ Observe the adjustment instructions above to ensure the best possible personal protection.◄

1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Angle

4 Backrest

The head restraints are adjusted manually, refer to Head restraints on page .

Lumbar support

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press the switch at the front or rear, respectively.

▷ Shift curvature up or down: press the switch at the top or bottom, respectively.

Backrest width

You can change the width of the backrest to suit your individual preferences by adjusting the lateral-support pads.

Press the front or rear end of the switch. Backrest width decreases or increases accordingly.

Longitudinal adjustment from outside/behind

To move the front seats forward or backward from outside or from one of the rear seats: with the door open, press the front end **1** or rear end **2** of the switch.

Head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

⚠ Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Front seats

Height adjustment

▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Removing

Only remove a head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question.

1. Pull up as far as it will go.

2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

Rear seats

Coupe: height adjustment

▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Convertible: raising and lowering

▷ Only lower the head restraints if there are no passengers in the rear. Raise all low-

ered head restraints before transporting pas-
sengers in the rear.◀

▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and
slide the head restraint down, arrow **2**.

Removing

Only remove a head restraint if no one will be
sitting on the seat in question.

1. Pull up as far as it will go.

2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head
restraint all the way out.

Coupe: folding head restraint down and up

Only fold down a head restraint if no one will be
sitting in the seat in question. Fold up the head
restraints again before transporting passengers
in the rear.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, it may
contain foldable head restraints.

Folding down:
Press the button, arrow **1**.

Folding up:
Pull the head restraint.

Entering the rear seats

Seat with manual longitudinal adjustment

Easy entry

The easy entry feature includes a memory func-
tion for the longitudinal adjustment and back-
rest angle.

1. Pull lever **1** and swing the backrest forward.

2. Push the seat forward.

Previous position

Push the seat backward and swing the backrest
back.

⚠ When pushing the seat into its rearmost
position, make sure that no one is injured
and that no objects are damaged.
Before driving off, engage both seats and back-
rests so that they are locked in place. Other-
wise, there is a risk of an accident due to unex-
pected movement.◀

Seat with electrical longitudinal adjustment

Easy entry

The easy entry feature includes a memory function for the longitudinal adjustment and backrest angle.

1. Pull lever **1** and swing the backrest forward.
2. Press the front end **2** of the switch until the seat has moved into the desired position.

Previous position

Press the rear end **3** of the switch until the seat automatically stops in its previous position, and fold the backrest back. If you release the switch before the previous seat position is reached, the seat will stop at its current position.

⚠️ When sliding the seat backward, make sure no one is injured and no objects are damaged.
Before driving off, engage both seats and backrests so that they are locked in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident due to unexpected movement.◀

Seat heating

Press the button once per temperature level. Three LEDs indicate the highest temperature.

To switch off:
Press button longer.

If you continue driving within approx. the next 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically activated at the previously set temperature.
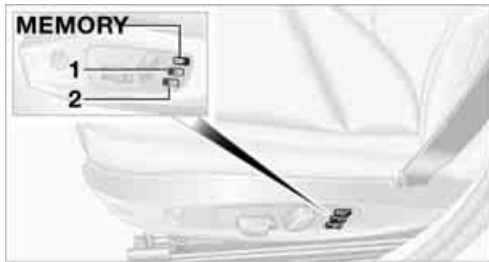
The temperature is lowered or the heating is switched off entirely to save on battery power. The LEDs stay lit.

Seat and mirror memory

You can store and call up two different combinations of driver's seat and exterior mirror positions.

Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

if the driver or front passenger unfasten their safety belts.

Damage to safety belts

⚠ If the safety belts are damaged or stressed in an accident: have the belt system, including any belt tensioners or child restraint systems, replaced and the belt anchors checked. Have this work carried out only at your BMW center. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

⚠ The front passenger's mirror is more convex than the driver's mirror. The objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from traffic behind you on the basis of what you see in the mirror; otherwise, there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

1 Adjustments

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out

The setting for the exterior mirrors is stored for the remote control currently in use. The stored position is called up automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Manual adjustment

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually: press the edge of the glass.

Folding mirrors in and out

By pressing button **3**, you can fold the mirrors in and out at driving speeds up to approx. 12 mph/ 20 km/h. This can be beneficial in narrow streets, for example, or for moving mirrors that were folded in by hand back out into their correct positions. Mirrors that have been folded in will fold out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Depending on the outside temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated automatically when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Passenger side mirror tilt function – automatic curb monitor

Activating

1. Push the switch to the position for the driver's side mirror, arrow 1.

2. Shift into reverse or move the selector lever into the R position.
   The glass of the mirror on the passenger side tilts slightly down. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle, e.g. a curb, when backing into a parking space.

Deactivating

Push the switch to the position for the passenger side mirror, arrow 2.

Interior rearview mirror

Turn the knob to reduce glare from the headlamps of cars behind you when driving at night.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature

The automatic dimming feature of the interior and exterior mirrors is controlled by two photo cells in the interior rearview mirror. One photo cell is in the mirror frame, see arrow; the other is on the back of the mirror.

In order to ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the photo cells clean, do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and windshield, and do not affix adhesive labels or stickers of any kind to the windshield directly in front of the mirror.

Steering wheel

Adjustments

⚠️ Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion; otherwise, there is a risk of an accident due to unexpected movement.◀

1. Fold the lever down.

2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.

3. Swing the lever back up.

⚠️ Do not use force to swing the lever back up; otherwise, the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Steering wheel heating

Press the button.

The LED in the button lights up when the steering wheel heating is switched on.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. As a result, some equipment described may not be available in a particular vehicle, for example due to the options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

The right place for children

⚠ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example.◀

Children should always sit in the rear

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

⚠ Children under the age of 13 or smaller than 5 ft/150 cm may be transported only in the rear in suitable child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and size. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must be buckled in with a safety belt as soon as there no longer is any child restraint system that is appropriate for their age, size and weight.

Children in the front passenger seat

⚠ Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags for the front passenger must be deactivated. Otherwise, a child traveling on that seat will face a significant risk of injury if the airbags are triggered off, even with a child restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags refer to page 98.

Installing child restraint systems

⚠ Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using child restraint systems. Otherwise, the protective effect may be diminished. ◀

Standard child restraint systems are designed to be secured with a lap belt or with the lap-belt section of a lap-and-shoulder belt. Incorrectly or improperly installed child restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children. Always follow the installation instructions for the system with the greatest care.

On the front passenger seat

⚠ After installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags for the front passenger are deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags deploy.◀

Seat position

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.

Backrest width

⚠ The backrest width of the front passenger seat must be at its widest possible setting. Do not change the setting after installing the child seat; otherwise, the child seat's stability on the front passenger seat is limited.◀

1. Adjust the backrest width to its widest setting, refer to page 51.
2. Install the child seat.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be prevented from being pulled out in order to fasten child restraint systems.

To lock the safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull the belt strap all the way out.
3. Allow the belt strap to retract and pull it taut against the child restraint system.

The safety belt is locked.

To unlock the safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the safety belt strap to retract all the way.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren.

⚠️ To install and use the LATCH child restraint system, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system; otherwise, the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◄

Mounts for lower LATCH anchors

Before installing the child seat, pull the belt out of the area for the child restraint fixing system.

⚠️ Ensure that both lower LATCH anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system is resting firmly against the backrest; otherwise, the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◄

Coupe: rear seats

The mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the labeled protective caps.

Convertible: rear seats

The mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows, in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Installing LATCH child restraint systems

1 Installing child restraint system, refer to the system operating instructions.
2 Make sure that both LATCH anchors are correctly locked in position.

Child restraint system with tether strap

Convertible

For Canadian Customers Only.

The following statement is required by Transport Canada.

This vehicle is not equipped with user-ready tether anchorages. As such neither a child restraint system, nor a booster cushion, requiring the use of a tether strap can be properly secured in the vehicle.

Coupe

⚠ Use the tether anchors to secure child restraint systems only; otherwise, the anchors could be damaged.◀

For child restraint systems with tether straps there are two additional anchors, see arrows.

Placement of the tether strap

Coupe

⚠ Make sure the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes to the top anchor. Otherwise, the strap will not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀

1   Direction of travel
2   Head restraint

3   Hook for upper retaining strap
4   Anchor
5   Rear window shelf
6   Seat backrest
7   Upper retaining strap of child restraint system

If necessary, fold the head restraints upward before use.

1. Push the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint holders.
3. Use the hook to clip the retaining strap to the anchor.
4. Push the head restraint into its lowermost position.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Ignition lock

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock

Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

▷ Radio readiness is switched on.
Individual electrical consumers can operate.

Comfort Access

If the car is equipped with Comfort Access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock under special circumstances, refer to page 40.

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock

⚠️ Do not forcibly pull the remote control out of the ignition lock as this may cause damage.◀

Before removing the remote control, push it all the way in to release the locking mechanism.

▷ The ignition is switched off if it was on.

Automatic transmission

You cannot take out the remote control unless the selector lever is in the P position: interlock.

Start/Stop button

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches radio readiness or the ignition on or off.

▷ Manual transmission: if you press the Start/Stop button and depress the clutch, the engine starts.
Automatic transmission and Sport automatic transmission with double clutch: when you press the Start/Stop button and depress the brake pedal, the engine starts.◀

Radio readiness

Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock

▷ In cars with Comfort Access, by touching the surface above the door lock, refer to Locking on page 40

Ignition on

All electrical consumers can operate. The odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

▷ When the engine is off, please switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electrical consumers in order to preserve the battery.◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps as well as displays in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting the engine

⚠ Do not run the engine in enclosed areas; otherwise, the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running; otherwise, such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard. Before leaving the car with the engine running, place the transmission in neutral or move the selector lever to position P and forcefully apply the parking brake to prevent the car from moving.◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

⚠ Avoid frequent starting in quick succession as well as repeated start attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or incompletely burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Manual transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 40.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and shift into neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Automatic transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 40.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Move the selector lever to position P.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Sport automatic transmission with double clutch

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 40.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The engine starts independent of the current transmission position.

Switching off the engine

⚠️ When leaving the vehicle, always take along the remote control; this precaution prevents children from starting the engine, for example.◀

⚠️ When parking, apply the parking brake forcefully; otherwise, the vehicle could begin to roll. On steep uphill and downhill inclines, also secure the vehicle by turning the wheels toward the curb, for example.◀

Manual transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 61.

Automatic transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 61.

Sport automatic transmission with double clutch

1. With the car at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
   If the transmission is shifted into N when the engine is switched off, you will be notified visually and acoustically of this fact.
2. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
3. Remove remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 61. The transmission is automatically shifted into transmission position P.

Parking brake

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Also follow the instructions on page 63, under Switching off the engine.

Indicator lamp

BRAKE The indicator lamp is lit, and when you drive off a signal sounds in addition. The parking brake is still applied.

(!) Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing

Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

⚠️ In exceptional cases, if the parking brake has to be used to slow or stop the car, do not pull the lever up too hard. In doing so, continuously press the button of the parking brake lever.
Otherwise, excessive force on the parking brake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to swerve.◀

▷ To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the parking brake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the parking brake is applied.◀

Manual transmission

⚠️ When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear.◄

Reverse gear

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 65.

Vehicle parking

⚠️ To prevent the vehicle from rolling, always select position P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle with the engine running.◄

Disengaging the remote control

In order to remove the remote control from the ignition lock, you must first move the selector lever to position P and switch off the engine: interlock. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 61.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + −

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed and, in manual mode, the engaged gear, e.g. M4.

Changing selector lever positions

▷ With the ignition switched on or the engine running, the selector lever can be moved out of position P.

▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake; otherwise, the selector lever will refuse to move: shiftlock.

⚠️ To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, depress the brake until you are ready to start.◄

A lock prevents you from inadvertently engaging selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The transmission locks to prevent the drive wheels from turning.

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Under normal operating conditions, fuel consumption is lowest when you are driving in position D.

Kickdown

Kickdown enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual operation M/S

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot; the Sport program is activated. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

To deactivate the sport program or manual mode M/S, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Shifting gears via the selector lever

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:
When you press the selector lever forwards or

backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear.

The engaged gear, e.g. M1 is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.

The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed again by the gear actually in use.

Changing gears using shifting paddles on steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears quickly since both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

▷ When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.

▷ If you do not accelerate or shift gears using the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

If the selector lever is in the M/S gear plane, manual mode remains active.◀

▷ To upshift, briefly pull the right shift paddle +.

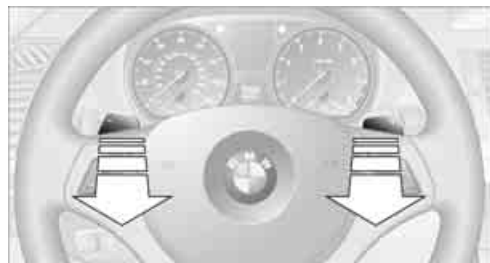▷ To downshift, briefly pull the left shift paddle –.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination
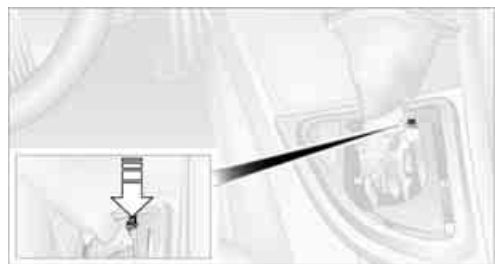
of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.

The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed again by the gear actually in use.

Overriding selector lever lock

If the selector lever will not move out of position P even though the ignition is switched on, the brake is depressed, and the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever lock can be overridden:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.

3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 244, press the red lever, see arrow, while moving the selector lever to the desired position.

7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch

The concept

The 7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch is an automated manual transmission with two clutches and secondary gear sets in which the clutching and shifting is handled by an electrohydraulic system.
With the 7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch, the gears are shifted without an interruption in driving power.

You operate the 7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch using the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers you the following functions:

▷ Either manual or automatic mode: sequential mode or drive mode

▷ Automatic downshifting and protection against incorrect gear selection, even in sequential mode

▷ Acceleration assistant, Launch Control, refer to page 70

▷ Automatic intermediate throttle application

System limitations

The 7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch has an overheating protection that protects the clutch from extreme loads.

The indicator lamp lights up in yellow if the transmission becomes too warm. Avoid high engine loads and frequent accelerations from zero. If the transmission is overheated, the indicator lamp lights up in red and the power flow to the motor is interrupted. It is only possible to continue driving once the transmission has cooled down.

Avoid frequent powerful accelerations from zero and do not hold the vehicle on inclines by pressing lightly on the accelerator while letting the clutch slip, as this may cause the transmission to overheat.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

The selector lever position and the engaged gear are displayed, e.g. M4.

Engaging selector lever positions

▷ The selector lever can be moved out of position P only with the engine running: interlock.

▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake; otherwise, the desired shift will not be executed: shiftlock.

Shifting into N, D, R

Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, overcoming a resistance point if necessary. When shifting out of P or into R, simultaneously press the button **1**.

The engaged selector lever position is also displayed on the selector lever.

When you release the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

Shifting into P

Press the button **P**.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

▷ The transmission is shifted into P if, with the engine running, you open the driver's door, do not have your safety belt fastened, and subsequently actuate neither the brake pedal nor the accelerator. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the automatic transmission selector lever is in the park position. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.◀

▷ The transmission is shifted into P as soon as you switch off the engine, unless the transmission is in N and the remote control is in the ignition lock, refer to page 61. As soon as you remove the remote control from the ignition lock, then the transmission is shifted into P.◀

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

▷ After the engine is switched off, the transmission remains in N if you leave the remote control in the ignition lock. You can use this function at a car wash, for example, refer to page 240.◀

D Drive mode

In Drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Kickdown

For sudden acceleration maneuvers such as passing, depress the accelerator past the resistance point. This provides maximum acceleration.

Sport program and manual operation M/S

Push selector lever toward the left from the selector lever position D, the Sport program is activated. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.
The engaged gear, e.g. S1, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear.
The engaged gear, e.g. M1 is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In the following situations, the 7-gear Sport automatic transmission with double clutch does the thinking for you:

▷ Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that could cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.

▷ At a stop, the transmission is automatically shifted down to the first gear.

▷ Shortly before the speed falls below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission automatically downshifts without your intervention.

Quick downshifting: even in sequential mode, you can skip over several gears in order to achieve an optimum acceleration. To do so, depress the accelerator past the resistance point.

To return to automatic mode, push the selector lever to the right.

Gear shifting

Upshift or downshift using the selector lever or the shift paddles. You do not need to lift your foot off the accelerator when doing so.
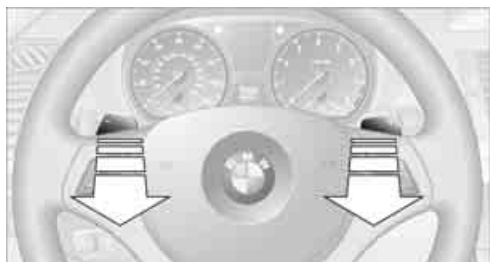
Using the selector lever

▷ To upshift, pull the selector lever toward the rear.

▷ To downshift, push it toward the front.

Using the shift paddles on the steering wheel

You can also shift manually using two shift paddles on the steering wheel. The shift paddles allow you to shift gears quickly since both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

▷ When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.

▷ If you do not accelerate or shift gears using the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode if the selector lever is in position D.

▷ To upshift, briefly pull the right shift paddle +.

▷ To downshift, briefly pull the left shift paddle –.

Driving dynamics control

The driving dynamics control permits you, at the push of a button, to have your BMW react in an even more sporty fashion when driving:

▷ Optimal use is made of the engine's speed range.

▷ Gear changes occur more quickly.

▷ The engine reacts more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.

Activating the system

Press the SPORT button.
The LED in the button lights up.

Deactivating the system

▷ Press the SPORT button again

▷ Switch off the engine

The LED in the button goes out.

Manually unlocking parking lock

▷ In the event of a power supply interruption such as a discharged or disconnected battery or an electrical malfunction, the parking lock must be manually unlocked; otherwise, the rear wheels are immobilized and the vehicle cannot be towed.◀

Only unlock the parking lock manually for towing and make sure to set the parking brake forcefully beforehand so that the vehicle cannot roll. Lock the parking lock again after the vehicle is parked.

Releasing

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.

2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.

3. Using the allen wrench from the tool kit, refer to page 244, rotate the cover until it reaches the stop, arrow 1, and remove, arrow **2**.

4. Insert allen wrench into the opening, arrow 1.

5. Rotate allen wrench until it reaches the stop, arrow **2**. The parking lock is unlocked.

⚠️ Do not turn allen wrench in the opposite direction; otherwise, you may damage the mechanism.◀

6. Remove allen wrench from the opening.

⚠️ After parking the vehicle, lock the parking lock again. Otherwise, there is a danger that the vehicle will roll.◀

Locking

1. Press the button, see arrow.
   The parking lock is locked again.

2. Replace cover again.

3. Clip the selector lever sleeve back into place.

4. Forcefully apply the parking brake.

Jump-starting and towing, starting on page 252.

Launch Control

Launch Control enables an optimum acceleration when starting off on a road surface with good traction.

⚠️ Do not use Launch Control too often; otherwise, the powerful stresses on the vehicle will lead to premature component wear.◀

Launch Control is ready for use when the engine is at operating temperature, i.e. after uninterrupted travel of at least 6.2 miles/10 km.

1. With the engine running, step on the brake with your left foot.

2. Activate Dynamic Traction Control (DTC), refer to page 91.

3. Activate Driving dynamics control, refer to page 69.

4. With the vehicle stationary, activate the manual mode and select 1st gear.

5. With your right foot, push the accelerator pedal past the resistance point. The engine speed for pulling away is adjusted. A flag symbol appears in the instrument cluster.

6. When you release the brake pedal, the vehicle accelerates. Keep the accelerator pedal floored.

7. The upshifting occurs automatically as long as you keep the accelerator pedal pressed past the resistance point.

Launch Control will be ready for use again after you drive a certain distance.

Launch Control is not available for use during the break-in phase, refer to page 124.

▷ To maintain driving stability, keep DSC activated whenever possible.◀

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signal

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

▷ Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp and the turn signals indicates that one of the turn signal bulbs has failed.◀

Signaling a turn briefly

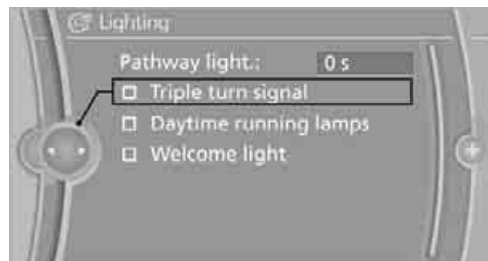Press the lever as far as the resistance point for as long as you wish to signal a turn.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever as far as the resistance point. The turn signals flash three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

1. "Settings"

2. "Lighting"

3. "Triple turn signal"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system

⚠ Do not switch on the wipers if they immobilized by ice; otherwise, damage to the wiper blades and wiper motor may occur.◀

⚠ Do not use the wipers when the window glass is dry; otherwise, the wiper blades may experience accelerated wear or damage.◀

1 Switching on wipers

2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe

3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps

5 Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upward, arrow 1.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system switches to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

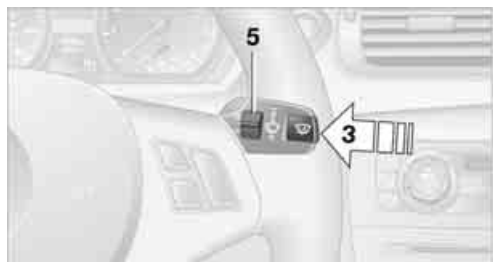Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system switches to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Intermittent wipe or rain sensor

If the car is not equipped with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is a preset.

If the car is equipped with a rain sensor, the time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall. The rain sensor is mounted on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumb wheel **5**.

Deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**.
The LED goes out.

⚠️ Deactivate the rain sensor before entering an automatic car wash. Failure to do

so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation. ◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps

Pull the lever, arrow 4.
Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wipers are operated for a short time.

When the vehicle lighting system is switched on, the headlamps are cleaned at regular and appropriate intervals.

⚠️ Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do, your vision could be obscured. Antifreeze should therefore be added to the fluid, refer to Washer fluid.
Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty; otherwise, you will damage the washer pump. ◀

Windshield washer nozzles

Both windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated with the engine running or the ignition switched on.
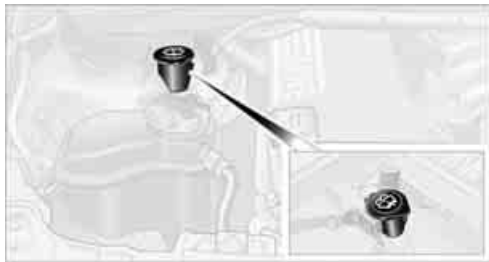
Washer fluid

⚠️ Washer fluid is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from ignition sources and only store it in the closed original container that is kept out of reach of children; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury. Comply with the instructions on the container. ◀

Washer fluid filler neck

⚠️ Only refill washer fluid when the engine is cool to avoid contact with hot engine parts. Otherwise, fluid spills constitute a fire hazard and a risk to personal safety. ◀

All washer nozzles are supplied with washer fluid by the same reservoir.

Fill with water and, if required, with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

▷ Mix the water and antifreeze before filling the washer fluid reservoir to make sure the correct concentration is maintained.◄

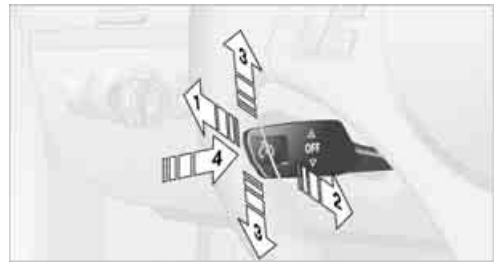### Capacity

Approx. 6.3 US quarts/6 liters.

Cruise control

The concept

You can use the cruise control feature beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. The car then stores and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column.

⚠ Do not use cruise control when driving at constant speed is prevented by adverse conditions, e.g. winding roads, dense traffic or poor road conditions due to, e.g. snow, rain, ice or loose surfaces. Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result.◄

One lever for all functions

1 Storing and maintaining speed or accelerating

2 Storing and maintaining speed or decelerating

3 Deactivating cruise control

4 Resuming a previously stored speed

Maintaining current speed

Briefly press the lever, arrow 1, or pull it briefly, arrow 2.
The car's current speed is stored and maintained. It is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

If the engine braking power is insufficient on a downhill slope, the set speed may be exceeded. On uphill grades vehicle speed may drop if the engine output is insufficient.

Increasing speed

Briefly press the lever, arrow 1, until the desired speed is reached.
Each time the lever is pressed briefly, the speed is increased by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

Accelerating using the lever

Press the lever, arrow 1, until the desired speed is reached.
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system stores and maintains the speed.

Decreasing speed

Repeatedly pull the lever, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is reached.

The functions here are the same as for increasing the speed or accelerating, except that the speed will be decreased.

Deactivating cruise control

Push the lever briefly upwards or downwards, arrow **3**.

In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

▷ When the brakes are applied.

▷ When the clutch of the manual transmission is engaged or the transmission is shifted into neutral.

▷ When the automatic transmission selector lever is moved into the neutral position N.

▷ When the selector lever of the sport automatic transmission with double clutch is moved into the neutral position N.

▷ When the vehicle travels faster or slower than the set speed for an extended period, e.g. when the accelerator is depressed.

▷ When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.

▷ When DSC is intervening

Resuming a previously stored speed

Press the button, arrow **4**.
The last stored speed is resumed and maintained.

The stored speed is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

The stored speed is cleared when the ignition is switched off.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the speed at which the vehicle is traveling is stored or when a stored speed is called up, the speed is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

Controls overview

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

1   Knob in the instrument cluster
2   Outside temperature and clock
3   Odometer and trip odometer

Knob in the instrument cluster

▷   To reset the trip odometer while the ignition is switched on

▷   To display the time, outside temperature and odometer briefly while the ignition is switched off

Units of measure

To select the respective units of measure, miles or km for the odometer as well as °F or °C for the outside temperature, refer to Units of measure on page 80.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Time, outside temperature display

Setting the time, refer to page 82.

Outside temperature warning

When the displayed temperature sinks to approx. +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. There is an increased risk of black ice.

⚠   Black ice can also form at temperatures above +37 °F /+3 °C. You should therefore drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, for example; otherwise, there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

Odometer and trip odometer

Resetting the trip odometer:
With the ignition switched on, press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is parked

If you still want to view the time, outside temperature and odometer reading briefly after the remote control has been taken out of the ignition lock:
Press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

Tachometer

Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Engine oil temperature

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the engine oil temperature is between approx. 210 ℉/100 ℃ and approx. 300 ℉/150 ℃.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears on the Control Display.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 14 US gal/53 liters.

You can find information on refueling on page 221.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Fuel display 135i: in speedometer.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone, a message briefly appears on the Control Display and the remaining cruising range is displayed on the computer. Under a cruising range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains in the Control Display.

With a dynamic driving style, e.g. rapid cornering, engine functions are not always assured.

⚠️ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◄

Computer

Displays in the instrument cluster

Calling up information

Press the button in the turn signal/high beam lever.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

▷ Cruising range
▷ Average speed
▷ Average fuel consumption
▷ Current fuel consumption
▷ No information

To set the corresponding units of measure, refer to Units of measure on page .

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the last 18 miles/30 km and the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

⚠️ It is important that you refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

With the trip computer, refer to page , you can have the average speed for another trip displayed.

To reset average speed: press the button in the turn signal/high beam lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

With the trip computer, refer to page , you can have the average consumption for another trip displayed.

To reset average fuel consumption: press the button in the turn signal/high beam lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Displays on the Control Display

The computer can also be opened via iDrive.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Displaying "Onboard info":

▷ Cruising range

▷ Distance from destination

▷ Estimated time of arrival if a destination has been entered in the navigation system.

Displaying "Trip computer":

▷ Departure time

▷ Trip duration

▷ Trip distance

Both displays show:

▷ The average speed and

▷ The average fuel consumption.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

1. Select the respective menu entry.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

Resetting the trip computer

You can reset all values:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset"

Settings and information

Operating principle

1 Button for:
- ▷ Selecting display
- ▷ Setting values

2 Button for:
- ▷ Confirming selected display or set values
- ▷ Calling up computer information 77

3 When the lights are on: instrument lighting brightness 105

4 Calling up Check Control 84

5 Checking oil level 233

6 Setting the time 82

7 Setting the date 84

8 Viewing service requirement display 80

Exiting displays

The outside temperature reading and the time reappear when you press button **2** or if you make no entries within approx. 15 seconds. If required, complete the current setting first.

Units of measure

You can change the units for fuel consumption, route/distance, temperature and pressure.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"

3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date of the next scheduled service are displayed briefly immediately after you start the engine or switch on the ignition.

▷ The extent of service work required can be read out from the remote control by your dealership Service Advisor.◀

For certain maintenance operations, you can view the respective distance remaining or due date individually in the instrument cluster.

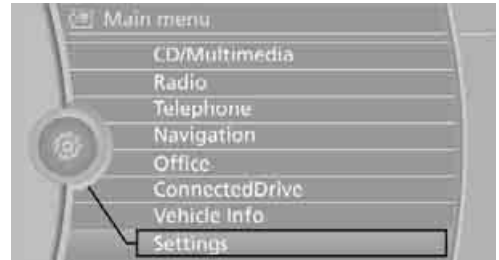1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 61.
2. Push button **1** in the turn signal/high beam lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "SERVICE-INFO".
3. Press button **2**.
4. Use button **1** to scroll through the individual service items.

Possible displays

1 Button for selecting functions
2 Service requirements
3 Engine oil
4 Roadworthiness test
5 Front brake pads

6 Rear brake pads
7 Brake fluid

The sequence of displayed service items may vary. The data for the next service appointment is shown first.

More information

Detailed information on service requirements

You can call up additional information on the maintenance regimen on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry:

Select the entry and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

Symbols

No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or a legally man-dated inspection is approaching.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections

Make sure the date on the Control Display is always set correctly, refer to page 84; otherwise, the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not ensured.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

4. "§ Vehicle inspection"

5. Open the menu for entering the deadline.
6. "Date:"
7. Create the settings.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is highlighted.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
10. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 237.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your BMW center prior to a service due date.

You can check when your BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Options"
4. "Last Service Request"

Clock

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 32.

Setting the time

In the instrument cluster

To set the 12h/24h format, refer to Setting the time format on page 83.

1. Push button **1** in the turn signal/high beam lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the time and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the hours.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Use button **1** to set the minutes.
6. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
7. Press button **2**.
   The system accepts the new time.

Via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.

2. "Settings"

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"

3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed, and then press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is stored.

Setting time zone

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"

4. Select desired time zone.

The time zone is stored.

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 32.

Setting the date

In the instrument cluster

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting the date format below.

1. Push button **1** in the turn signal/high beam lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the date and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the day of the month.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Set the month and the year in the same way.
6. Press button **2**.
   The system stores the new date.

Via iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed, and press the controller.

5. Create the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"

4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any malfunctions in the systems monitored. Such a Check Control message includes indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster and, in some circumstances, an acoustic signal as well as text messages at the top of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

⚠ indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. These Check Control messages can be viewed again later, refer to page 86.

Text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Supplemental text messages

You can call up more information on the Control Display, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control.

The text of urgent messages is displayed automatically.

To exit the display:
Select "OK" and press the Controller.

Symbols

Depending on the Check Control message, you can select from among the following functions in the supplementary text messages.

▷ "Service request"
Contact your BMW center.

▷ "Roadside Assistance"
Contact BMW Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages

Press the button on the turn signal/high beam lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and remain visible until the malfunction has been rectified. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.
These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this, they are displayed again automatically.

⚠️ They are marked with the symbol shown here.

▷ Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

⚠️ They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Push button **1** in the turn signal/high beam lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "CHECK".

2. Press button **2**.
   "CHECK OK" appears if there are no Check Control messages. If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding lamp lights up. It is accompanied by a text message on the Control Display.

3. Push button **1** to check for other messages.

4. Press button **2**.
   The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Via iDrive

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Check Control"

4. Select the text message.

Speed limit

You can enter a speed, and a Check Control message will indicate when you reach this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"

2. "Speed"

3. "Warning at:"

4. Turn the controller until the desired speed is displayed.

5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"

4. Press the controller.

Settings on the Control Display

Language on the Control Display

Setting the language

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"

3. "Language:"

4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

Switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of the Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"

3. "Brightness"

4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. In bright conditions, for example, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Technology for driving comfort and safety

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Park Distance Control PDC

The concept

The PDC assists you with maneuvering in tight parking spaces. Acoustic signals and a visual indicator warn you of the presence of an object behind your vehicle. Four ultrasonic sensors in the bumper measure the distance.

These sensors have a range of approx. 6.5 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning does not sound until an object is approx. 24 in/60 cm from the corner sensors or approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the center sensors.

⚠️ PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed; otherwise, physical circumstances may lead to the system warning being issued too late.◀

Switching on automatically

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated after approx. second when you engage reverse gear or move the automatic transmission selector lever to position R. Wait this short period before driving.

Switching off automatically

After approx. 164 ft/50 m of driving or above approx. 18 mph/30 km/h, the system switches off and the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, its position is indicated correspondingly by an interval tone. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An interval tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

▷ If you stop in front of an object that has been detected by only one of the corner sensors

▷ If you are driving parallel to a wall

Malfunction

P⌇! The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To avoid this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. When using a high-pressure cleaner, do not spray the sensors for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 1 ft/30 cm.

PDC with visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds. The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limitations

⚠ Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with trailer towbars and hitches, thin or wedge-shaped objects, etc. Low objects that have already been displayed, e.g. curbs, can disappear again from the detection area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. Loud sound sources outside or inside the car can drown out the PDC signal. Therefore, always drive cautiously; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury or property damage. ◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW has a number of systems that help to maintain the vehicle's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely, refer to page .

Electronic brake-force distribution EBV

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Dynamic Brake Control DBC

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake for the duration of the full braking application.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

DSC prevents the driving wheels from losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate. The system also recognizes unstable driving conditions, for example if the rear of the car is about to swerve or if momentum is acting at an angle past the front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions at the individual wheels.

⚠ The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin again by taking risks, as this could result in an accident. ◀

Deactivating DSC

Press the button for at least 3 seconds until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up and DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Dynamic Traction Control DTC and DSC have been simultaneously deactivated. Stabilizing and drive-output promoting actions are no longer executed.

In the same way as with a differential interlock, even if DSC is deactivated, brake actions are still performed on the rear axle to enhance drive

output if the drive wheels experience a significant loss of traction.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button again; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

For better control

If the indicator lamp flashes: the DSC controls the driving and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp lights up: DSC and DTC have failed.

The indicator lamp lights up and DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster: DSC is deactivated.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

▷ When driving uphill on snow-covered roads, in slush or on unplowed, snow-covered roads

▷ When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground

▷ When driving with snow chains

Activating DTC

Press the button; the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up and TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

For better control

If the indicator lamp flashes: DTC controls the driving and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp lights up: DSC and DTC have failed.

The indicator lamp lights up and TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster: DTC is activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

Drive-off assistant

The drive-off assistant enables you to drive off smoothly on uphill gradients. It is not necessary to use the parking brake for this.

1. Hold the car in place by depressing the brake.

2. Release the brake and drive off without delay.

The drive-off assistant holds the car in place for approx. 2 seconds after the brake is released. Drive off without delay after releasing the brake. Otherwise, the drive-off assistant will no longer hold the car in place after approx. 2 seconds and the car will start to roll backwards.◀

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

The system detects a pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel change. This is detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

The system must have been initialized while the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured.

Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reinitialize the system.

System limitations

⚠️ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◄

The system will not detect a natural, uniform pressure loss in all four tires. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

▷ System has not been initialized

▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface

▷ Performance-oriented style of driving: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration

▷ Snow chains are attached

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g. whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Reset"

4. Start the engine – do not drive away.

5. Start the initialization by selecting "Reset".

6. Start driving.

▷ The initialization is completed during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically.◄

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds. There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire pressure.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle with caution. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, do not continue driving; continuing to drive can result in serious accidents.◀

When a flat tire is reported, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Run-flat tires

With a damaged tire, is possible to continue driving at speeds of up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

When driving with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

3. At the next opportunity, check the inflation pressure in all four tires.

   If the inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor might not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire pressure:

The distance it is possible to drive with a flat tire depends on the load and the stress on the vehicle while driving.

With an average load, it may be possible to drive for approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When driving with damaged tires, the handling characteristics change, e.g. the vehicle will skid sooner when braking, braking distances will be longer, or self-steering response will change. Adapt your driving style accordingly. Avoid

turning abruptly and driving over obstacles such as curbs, potholes, etc.

Since the possible driving distance depends to a considerable degree on the strain exerted on the vehicle while driving, it can be shorter or, with a gentle driving style, can also be longer, depending on the speed, road condition, outside temperature, vehicle load, etc.

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

When there is a tire pressure loss, the handling characteristics change, e.g. there will be reduced directional stability during braking, braking distances will be longer, and self-steering response will change.◀

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate final failure of the tire. Reduce your speed and bring the vehicle to a stop; otherwise, tire components may become detached, which could result in an accident. Do not continue driving; instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The concept

Check the inflation pressure in the four installed tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirement

The system must have been reset while the inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly. Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.

System limitations

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◀

The system does not function correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated even though the tire inflation pressures are correct.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

▷ When a wheel without TPM electronics is installed.

▷ Interference with TPM by other systems or devices with the same transmission frequency.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

Status indicator on the Control Display

The color of the tires represents the status of the tires and the system.

A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

A correction is only required when this is indicated by the TPM.

Green wheels

The inflation pressure corresponds to the desired state.

"TPM active" appears in the Control Display.

One wheel yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels yellow

▷ There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in several tires.

▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus issues a warning based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

Gray wheels

The system cannot detect a puncture.

Reasons for this may be:

▷ TPM is being reset.

▷ Interference from systems or devices that use the same radio frequency.

▷ Malfunction.

Resetting the system

Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"

4. Start the engine – do not drive away.
5. Reset the inflation pressure by selecting "Reset".
6. Start driving.

The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving a few minutes, the set inflation pressures in the tires are accepted as the target values to be monitored. The resetting process is completed automatically as you drive. On the Control Display, the wheels are shown in green and "Status: TPM active" is displayed.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting continues automatically.

▷ If a flat tire is detected while the system is resetting, all tires on the Control Display are displayed in yellow. The message "Low tire!" is displayed.◀

Message for low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamps light up in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds.

▷ There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated wheel.

▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus issues a warning based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

Reduce speed and stop the vehicle with caution. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

⚠ If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, do not continue driving; continuing to drive can result in serious accidents.◀

When a low tire pressure is reported, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Run-flat tires

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

When driving with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

3. At the next opportunity, check the inflation pressure in all four tires.

   If the inflation pressure is correct in all four tires, then the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. The system must then be reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire pressure:

The distance it is possible to drive with a flat tire depends on the load and the stress on the vehicle while driving.

With an average load, it may be possible to drive for approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When driving with damaged tires, the handling characteristics change, e.g. the vehicle will skid sooner when braking, braking distances will be longer, or self-steering response will change. Adapt your driving style accordingly. Avoid turning abruptly and driving over obstacles such as curbs, potholes, etc.

Since the possible driving distance depends to a considerable degree on the strain exerted on the vehicle while driving, it can be shorter or, with a gentle driving style, can also be longer, depending on the speed, road condition, outside temperature, vehicle load, etc.

⚠ Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
When there is a tire pressure loss, the handling characteristics change, e.g. there will be reduced directional stability during braking, braking distances will be longer, and self-steering response will change.◀

⚠ Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate complete failure of the tire.
Reduce your speed and bring the vehicle to a stop; otherwise, tire components may become detached, which could result in an accident. Do not continue driving; instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Message for unsuccessful system reset

Yellow warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display.

The system has detected a wheel change, but was not reset. A reliable warning is not possible at the current inflation pressures.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system, refer to page 94.

Malfunction

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the large warning lamp lights up in yellow.The tires appear in gray in the Control Display. No punctures can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

▷ A wheel without TPM electronics has been installed:
  Have it checked by your BMW center.

▷ Malfunction
  Have the system checked

▷ Tire Pressure Monitor was unable to complete the resetting process. Reset the system again.

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the large warning lamp lights up in yellow.The tires appear in gray in the Control Display.

Display in the following situations:

Interference from systems or devices that use the same radio frequency. The system automatically becomes active again when the vehicle moves out of the interference zone.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138
Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recom-

mended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure indicator.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously lit. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Active steering

The concept

Active steering varies the turning angle of the front wheels in relation to steering wheel movements. It also varies the steering force required to turn the wheels depending on the speed at which you are driving.

When you are driving in the low speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle is increased, i.e. steering becomes very direct and less effort is required to turn the wheels. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced as the speed increases. This improves the handling of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stabilizing intervention is simultaneously deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page .

Malfunction

The warning lamps come on. Active steering is malfunctioning or is temporarily deactivated. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-enhancing feature may also be deactivated. Drive cautiously and think well ahead.

Deactivation

Active steering is deactivated to perform an initialization. A message indicates that the feature is deactivated. Initialization may take several minutes.

If the message does not disappear during the current trip, have the system checked.

Defect

If there is a defect, a corresponding text message appears. Have the system checked.

Servotronic

The concept

The Servotronic varies the steering force required to turn the wheels relative to the vehicle speed.
At low speeds, the steering force is strongly assisted, i.e. less force is needed for steering. As the vehicle speed increases, the steering assisting power is reduced.

This system functions automatically.

Malfunctions

The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. Servotronic is malfunctioning or has failed. Steering response will be different. You can continue your journey, but moderate your speed and exercise due caution. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Brake Force Display

On the left: normal braking.
On the right: sharp braking.

When the rear fog lamps are switched on, the Brake Force Display is not active and the illuminated area for normal braking is reduced by approximately half.

Airbags

The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Coupe: head airbags

3 Side airbags in the seat backrests

4 Convertible: knee airbags

Protective action

⚠️ Observe the adjustment instructions on page 49 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags have been designed to not be triggered in every collision situation, e.g. not in minor accidents or rear-end collisions.

⚠️ Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way.
Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
Do not attach seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically approved for seats with integral side airbags to the front seats. Do not

hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests. Do not attempt to remove the airbag retention system from the vehicle. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstered covers on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seats and roof posts, as well as the sides of the roof lining. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.
Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of faults, immobilization, or after the airbag system has been triggered, only have the testing, repair, or disassembly and scrapping of gas generator performed by your BMW center or a workshop that has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to work on the system could lead to failure in an emergency or to undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warning notices and information about the airbags can also be found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

An analysis of the impression in the front passenger seat cushion determines whether and how the seat is occupied. The front and side airbags for the front passenger are activated or deactivated by the system accordingly.

▷ The indicator lamp above the interior rearview mirror shows the current status of the front passenger airbags, deactivated or

activated, refer to Status of front passenger airbags below.◀

![warning] Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, read the safety precautions and handling instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page .
The front and side airbags can also be deactivated by adolescents and adults sitting in certain positions; the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. In such cases, the passenger should change his or her sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired airbag status cannot be achieved by changing the sitting position, transport the relevant passenger on a rear seat. Do not attach seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not place any items under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise, a correct analysis of the seat cushion is not ensured.◀

Status of front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags shows the functional status of the front passenger front and side airbags in accordance with whether and how the front passenger seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a specially designated child restraint system is detected, as intended, on the seat.

The front and side airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

![info] Most child seats are detected by the system,. This particularly applies to child seats that were required by NHTSA at the time of manufacture of the vehicle. After mounting a child seat, ensure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbag is lit. It indicates that the child seat has been detected and that the front passenger airbags are deactivated.◀

▷ The indicator lamp does not come on when, for example, a person of sufficient size and in a correct sitting position is detected on the seat.
The front and side airbags for the front passenger are activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up if the seat is empty.
The front and side airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

As of radio readiness, refer to page , the warning lamp lights up briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system malfunction

▷ Warning lamp does not light up at radio readiness or beyond.

▷ Warning lamp remains permanently on.

![warning] In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay; otherwise, there is the risk that the system will not function

as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs.◀

Convertible: rollover protection system

The rollover protection system is activated automatically in the event of an accident of sufficient severity or an extreme tilt in the car's longitudinal axis. The protection bars behind the rear head restraints deploy within fractions of a second.

As a supplementary system to the reinforced windshield frame, the rollover protection system increases the safety of the vehicle occupants.

⚠ Always keep the area of movement of the rollover protection system clear.
In minor accidents, you are protected by the fastened safety belt and, depending on accident severity, by the safety belt tensioner and multi-phase airbag retention system.◀

Resetting

If the rollover protection system was not impacted after being automatically activated, it can be reset by lowering the protection bars to their original positions. This does not require tools.

1. Push the locking lever to one side and hold it there.

2. Push the protection bar halfway down from above.

3. Release the locking lever.

4. Push the protection bar down until it snaps into place.

5. Repeat the procedure for the other protection bar.

Have the rollover protection system checked after an unexpected activation.

⚠ If the rollover protective system is extended, do not operate the convertible top.
Do not make any modifications to the individual components of the rollover protection system or its cabling.
Work on the rollover protection system should be performed only by your BMW center.
Faulty repair may lead to the failure of the system or malfunctions.
To check the system and ensure flawless long-term operation, always observe the service intervals, refer to page 80.◀

Lamps

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.
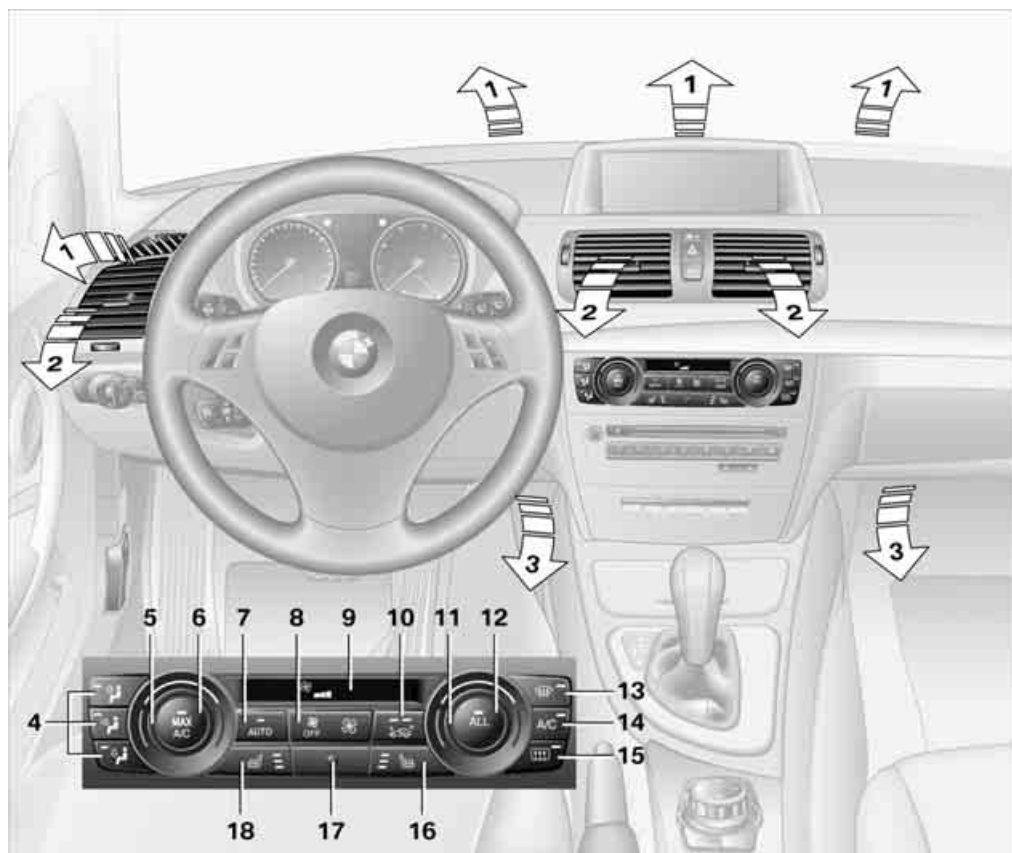
Overview

0 Lamps off,
  daytime running lights

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lights

2 Low beams,
  welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control, daytime running lights, welcome lamps, High-beam Assistant, Adaptive Light Control

Parking lamps/low beams, automatic headlamp control

General information

When the driver's door is opened with ignition switched off, then the exterior lighting is automatically switched off if the light switch is in position **0**, **2**, or **3**.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

With halogen headlamps: when the ignition is switched off and the switch is in position **1**, only the outside sections of the rear lamps are illuminated, refer to page 247.

▷ The parking lamps will discharge the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the left-hand or right-hand roadside parking lamps, refer to page 103.◀

Low-beam headlamps

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control

When the switch is in position **3**, the low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient lighting conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, in twilight, or if there is precipitation. The Adaptive Light Control is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on. You can also activate the daytime running lights, refer to page 102. In the situations described above, the lamps then automatically switch from daytime running lights to low beams.

The headlamps may also come on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

▷ The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient

lighting conditions. For example, the system cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low-beam headlamps manually under these conditions.◄

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when you park the car, the parking lamps and the interior lamps light up briefly when you unlock the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

If the headlamp flasher is activated after switching off the ignition with the lamps switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time.

Setting duration

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.:"

4. Set the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights light up in switch position **0**, **1** and **3**. They are less powerful than the low beams.

The tail lamps may also light up.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lights

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Light Control

The concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering

angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves such as on switchbacks or when turning, at speeds up to approx. 40 mph/70 km/h, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the area inside the curve.

Activating Adaptive Light Control

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 101.

The corner-illuminating lamp is switched on automatically, depending on the steering wheel angle or turn signal indicator.

Standstill function: to avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not direct light toward the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When you are reversing, only the corner-illuminating lamps are switched on and active on both sides.

Malfunction

The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. The Adaptive Light Control is malfunctioning or failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High beams/roadside parking lamps

1 High beams
2 Headlamp flasher
3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right

There is an additional option of switching on the lamps on the side of the car facing the road when parked.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the pressure point for approx. 1 second, arrow 3.

The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Press the lever in the opposite direction to the pressure point, arrow 3.

High-beam Assistant

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. It handles this task for you and gives you the benefit of the best possible view. You can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating the system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 101.

2. With the low beams switched on, briefly push the turn signal/high beam lever in the direction of the high beam.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the high beams are activated. The system automatically switches from high beams to low beams and vice versa in response to oncoming traffic,

traffic ahead of you, and adequate ambient lighting, e.g. on city streets.

Switching the high beams on and off manually

Whenever you wish, or when the situation requires, you can intervene:

▷ If the High-beam Assistant switches on the high beams, but you would like to drive with the low beams, simply switch off the high beams using the turn signal/high beam lever. This deactivates the High-beam Assistant.
To reactivate the system, briefly push the turn signal/high beam lever toward the high beams again.

▷ If the High-beam Assistant switches on the low beams, but you would like to drive with the high beams, switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and the high beams need to be switched off manually, if necessary.
To reactivate the system, briefly push the turn signal/high beam lever toward the high beams again.

▷ Use the headlamp flasher as usual with the low beams switched on.

System limitations

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk.◀

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation

▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings

▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways

▷ In poorly lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs

▷ At low speeds

▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

▷ If the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Activating via iDrive

1. "Settings"

2. "Lighting"

3. "High beam assistant"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Fog lamps

To switch on/off, press the button.

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps are switched off while you activate the headlamp flasher or switch on the high beams.

If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Instrument lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting only when the parking lamps or the low beams are switched on.

1. Push button **1** in the turn signal/high beam lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the brightness level and the word "SET".

2. Press button **2**.

3. Push button **1** up or down to select the desired brightness level.

4. Press button **2**.
    The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Interior lamps

The interior lamps, the footwell lamps, entry lamps, trunk lamp, and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

The LEDs for the courtesy lamps are set in the door handles and illuminate the ground in front of the doors.

To reduce the drain on the battery, a few minutes after the radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 61, all lights in the vehicle's passenger compartment are switched off.◀

Switching interior lamps on/off manually

Interior lamps, front and rear:
To switch on and off, press the button.

To switch off the interior lamps, footwell lamps, entry lamps, and courtesy lamps permanently, press the button for the front interior lamps for about 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

There are reading lamps at the front and rear, next to the interior lights. To switch on and off, press the button.

Climate

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Overview

1   Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows

2   Air to the upper body area: Draft-free ventilation   110

3   Air to the footwell

4   Air distribution, manual

5   Temperature, left side

6 Maximum cooling

7 AUTO program

8 Air volume, manual adjustment; AUTO intensity

9 Display

10 Automatic recirculated air control AUC/ Recirculated air mode

11 Temperature, right side

12 ALL program

13 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

14 Switching cooling function on/off manually

15 Rear window defroster

16 Seat heating, right side 54

17 Interior temperature sensor, please keep clear

18 Seat heating, left side 54

Automatic climate control

Comfortable interior climate

AUTO program **7** offers the ideal air distribution and air volume for almost all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an interior temperature which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile settings on page 33.

Adjusting air distribution manually

The air distribution can be switched on and off manually. The air is directed to the windshield, to the upper body area and to the footwell.

The automatic air distribution can be switched back on by pressing the AUTO button. The cooling function is switched on automatically

and the manual air distribution setting is cleared.

Temperature

Turn to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary, and then maintains it.

Avoid rapid switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum heating power can be obtained with the highest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

The system cools steadily in the lowest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

Maximum cooling

Press the button.
The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air volume and recirculated air mode.

Air flows out of the vent outlets for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible

▷ Above an outside temperature of approx. 32 ºF /0 ºC

▷ When the engine is running

AUTO program

Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed toward the windshield, the side windows, the upper body and the footwell.

Pressing the AUTO button automatically switches on the cooling function.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The program is switched off when the air distribution is set manually or the button is pressed again.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted:

Press the left side of the button to reduce the intensity. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Convertible Program

The Convertible Program is active when the convertible top is open and the AUTO program is switched on. During the Convertible Program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the soft top down. In addition, the air volume is increased as vehicle speed increases.

The effectiveness of the Convertible Program can be enhanced considerably by installing the wind deflector.◀

Adjusting air volume manually

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left side of the button to reduce the air volume. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The air flow rate is lowered or switched off entirely to reduce the drain on the battery. The display remains the same.

Automatic recirculated air control AUC/Recirculated air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.

▷ Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

▷ Right-hand LED on, recirculated air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off. If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated air mode and increase the air volume, if necessary. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.

The recirculated air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods; otherwise, the quality of the air inside the car will gradually deteriorate.◀

Via the button on the steering wheel

You can switch quickly between the recirculated air mode and the previous mode using a button on the steering wheel, refer to page 13.

ALL program

Press the button.

The current temperature setting on the driver's side is transferred to the front passenger side.

If the temperature setting on the driver's side is changed, the temperature on the front passenger side is changed as well.

The program is switched off when the setting is adjusted on the front passenger side or the button is pressed again.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Press the button.

Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.
For this purpose, also switch on the cooling function.

Switching cooling function on/off

The passenger compartment can only be cooled while the engine is running.

Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and – depending on the temperature setting – warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

Pressing the AUTO button automatically switches on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

Press the button.

The defroster is switched off automatically after a certain time.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the upper wires serve as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

Press and hold the left button or press the left button at the lowest level.

All displays are cleared except for the rear window defroster if it is switched on.

▷ The outside air supply is blocked when the automatic climate control is switched off. If the air quality deteriorates or the window fogs over, switch the system back on and increase the air volume. ◀

Switching on

Press any button, except the buttons for the ALL program or the rear window defroster.

Ventilation

1 Use the thumbwheels to smoothly open and close the air vents

2 Use the levers to change the direction of the airflow

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, e.g. if it has become too hot in the car.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and not straight at you.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter during routine maintenance.

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation provides ventilation to the passenger compartment and lowers its temperature, if necessary.

For any outside temperature, the system can be switched on or off directly or via a preset switch-on time. It will remain on for 30 minutes.

Due to its high power consumption, the parked car ventilation system should not be switched on twice in a row without driving in between to allow the battery to recharge.

Open the vents so that air can flow out.

They can be operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate parked-car vent."

⌘ The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes.

Preselecting switch-on times

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"
4. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"

5. Turn the controller: set the hours.

6. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.
7. Turn the controller: set the minutes.
8. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.

⌘ The symbol on the automatic climate Control Display lights up.

⌘ The symbol on the automatic climate Control Display flashes when the system has switched on.

▷ The respective system is switched on within the next 24 hours only. After these have elapsed, it must be reactivated. ◄

Practical interior accessories

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Integrated universal remote control

The concept

The Integrated universal remote control can be used to operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled devices such as garage door openers or lighting systems. The Integrated universal remote control thus replaces as many as three different hand-held transmitters. To operate them, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. Programming requires the hand-held transmitter for the respective device.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control to operate a device, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the pivoting or travel range of the device being operated.

Also follow the safety instructions supplied with the hand-held transmitter.◀

For security reasons, make sure to delete the stored functions before selling the vehicle, refer to page 114.

Compatibility

If this symbol appears on the package or in the instructions supplied with the device to be operated, you can generally assume that the device is compatible with the Integrated universal remote control.

For additional questions, please consult:

▷ Your BMW center.

▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Controls on the interior rearview mirror

1 LED
2 Buttons
3 Hand-held transmitter, required for programming.

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Initial operation:
   Simultaneously hold down the right and left buttons on the inside mirror for approx. 20 seconds until the LED on the inside mirror flashes.

   All programs of the buttons on the rearview mirror are deleted.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter of the device to be controlled about 1 in/2.5 cm to 3 in/8 cm away from the buttons on the inside mirror.

   The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be pro-grammed on the inside mirror.

   The LED on the inside mirror will flash slowly at first.

5. As soon as the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing indicates that the button on the inside mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash rapidly within 60 seconds, change the distance between the inside mirror and the hand-held trans-mitter and repeat this step. This may require several attempts. Allow at least 15 seconds between attempts.

6. To program additional functions on the other buttons of the inside mirror, repeat steps 3 through 5.

The buttons on the inside mirror can be used to operate the devices if the ignition is switched on.

Special procedure with alternating-code systems

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the device to be controlled uses an alternating-code system.

To do so, either read the instructions for the device or hold down the programmed button on the inside mirror. If the LED on the inside mirror flashes quickly at first and then remains lit for 2 seconds, the device uses an alternating-code system. The LED flashes and lights up repeat-edly for approx. 20 seconds.

In devices with an alternating-code system, the Integrated universal remote control and the device must also be synchronized.

For information about synchronizing can also be found in the operating instructions for the device to be set.

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing:

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.

2. Program the Integrated universal remote control as described above.

3. Locate and press the synchronization but-ton on the device to be set. You have approx. 30 seconds to perform the next step.

4. Hold down the programmed button on the inside mirror for approx. 3 seconds and then release it. Repeat this operation, up to three times if necessary, to complete the syn-chronization. If the synchronization has succeeded, the programmed function is performed.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Hold the hand-held transmitter of the device to be controlled about 1 in/2.5 cm to 3 in/8 cm away from the buttons on the inside mirror.

   The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

3. Press the desired button on the inside mir-ror.

4. If the LED on the inside mirror flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit key of the hand-held transmitter.

5. As soon as the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons.

   If the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 60 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.

   Canada: if the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 60 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step or, if the programming

by means of the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the button on the inside mirror and then press and release the button on the hand-held transmitter several times, holding it down for 2 seconds each time.

Operation

⚠️ To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control to operate a device, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the pivoting or travel range of the device being operated.

Also follow the safety instructions supplied with the hand-held transmitter.◀

The button on the inside mirror can be used to operate the device, for example the garage door, if the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. To do so, within the reception range of the device, press the button of the device until the function is triggered. The LED on the inside mirror remains lit during transmission of the radio signal.

Deleting stored functions

Simultaneously hold down the right and left buttons on the inside mirror for approx. 20 seconds until the LED on the inside mirror flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Digital compass

1   Adjustment button
2   Display

The display shows you the main or secondary compass direction in which you are driving.

Operating principle

You can call up various functions by pressing the adjustment button with a pointed object such as a pen or similar item. The following adjustment options are displayed one after the other, depending on how long you keep the adjustment button pressed:

▷   Press briefly: switch display on/off

▷   3 to 6 seconds: set compass zone

▷   6 to 9 seconds: calibrate compass

▷   9 to 12 seconds: set left-hand/right-hand steering

▷   12 to 15 seconds: setting the language

Setting compass zones

Set the compass zone corresponding to your vehicle's geographic location so that the compass can function correctly; refer to the world map with compass zones.

To set the compass zones, press the setting button for approx. 3-4 seconds. The number of the compass zone set is shown in the display.

To change the zone setting, briefly press the adjustment button repeatedly until the display shows the number of the compass zone corresponding to your current location.

The compass is operational again after approx. 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the following situations:

▷ An incorrect compass direction is shown.

▷ The compass direction shown does not change although the direction of travel does.

▷ Not all compass directions are shown.

Procedure

1. Make sure that no large metal objects or overhead power lines are in the vicinity of your vehicle and that you have enough space to drive in a circle.

2. Set the currently valid compass zone.

3. Convertible: ensure that the convertible top is fully closed.

4. Press the setting button approx. 6-7 seconds to call up C. Then drive in a complete circle at least once at a maximum speed of 4 mph/7 km/h. If the calibration is successful, display C is replaced with the points of the compass.

5. Convertible: open the convertible top fully and repeat step 4.

Setting right-hand/left-hand steering

Your digital compass is factory-set to right-hand or left-hand steering, in accordance with your vehicle.

Setting the language

You can set the language of the display:

Press the setting button for approx. 12-13 seconds. Briefly press the adjustment button again to switch between English, "E", and German, "O".

The setting is automatically saved after approx. 10 seconds.

Glove compartment

Opening

Pull the handle.
The light in the glove compartment comes on.

⚠ To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Fold the cover up.

Locking

To lock the glove compartment, use the integrated key of the remote control, refer to page 32.

USB interface for data transmission

Port for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g. music collections, refer to page 173.

Observe the following when connecting:

▷ Do not forcibly connect the plug to the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect USB hard discs.

▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Center armrest

Storage compartment

The center armrest between the front seats contains a credit card holder and, depending on the equipment version, a compartment or a snap-in adapter.

Opening

Press the button, see arrow.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the vehicle speakers:

▷ AUX-IN port, refer to page 177.

▷ USB audio interface/extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone, refer to page 178.

Storage compartments inside the vehicle

Compartments are located next to the steering column, on the doors, in the center console, and in the rear between the seats.

⚠️ Do not place unsecured objects in them; otherwise, they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in the event of braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

⚠️ Do not place non-slip pads, e.g. anti-slip mats, on the dashboard; the materials of these pads may damage it.◀

Coupe: clothes hooks

There are clothes hooks in the rear.

⚠️ Items of clothing hung from the hooks must not obstruct the driver's view. Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

Cupholders

⚠️ Use lightweight and shatterproof containers and do not transport hot beverages; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of the accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cupholders; otherwise, damage could result.◀

There is one cupholder in the center console.

You can mount an attachable cupholder on the side of the center console.

Ashtray

Opening

Push the ridge on the cover.

Emptying

Lift out the insert.

Lighter

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

The lighter can be pulled out as soon as it pops back out.

⚠️ Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
When leaving the car, always remove the remote control so that children cannot operate the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

Connecting electrical appliances

In your BMW, when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical devices such as a hand lamp, car vacuum cleaner, etc. if at least one of the following sockets is available.

The total load of all sockets should not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Avoid damaging the sockets by attempting to insert plugs of unsuitable shape or size.

⚠️ Do not connect battery chargers to the sockets built into the vehicle at the plant; doing so may damage the vehicle.◀

Cigarette lighter socket

To access the socket:
Open the front ashtray and remove the cigarette lighter or cover from the socket.

In the center console

To access the socket, refer to External devices on page .

Coupe: through-loading system

Opening

1. To release the rear seat backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the trunk.

2. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.

Closing

Return the rear seat backrest to the upright seating position and engage it.

⚠️ When returning the backrest into the seating position, make sure that the seat's locking mechanism is properly engaged. Otherwise, cargo could be thrown around and endanger the occupants in the event of sharp braking or swerving.◀

The lashing eyes in the trunk provide you with a way to attach trunk nets or draw straps for

securing suitcases and luggage, refer to
page .

Convertible: cargo loading

Enlarging the trunk

When the convertible top is closed you can
enlarge the trunk:
To do so, fold the trunk partition upward.

Before opening the convertible top, pull the
trunk partition down until it engages.

Ensure that pointed objects do not press
against the trunk partition from below.

> ▷ The convertible top can only be opened
> when the trunk partition is folded down. ◀

Storage compartments inside the trunk

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the left
side trim panel of the trunk will contain a rubber
strap for securing small objects such as a fold-
ing umbrella.

The lashing eyes in the trunk provide you with a
way to attach trunk nets or draw straps for
securing suitcases and luggage, refer to
page .

Coupe: ski bag

The ski bag is designed for safe, clean transport
of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to
2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length
of up to 6.6 ft/2.0 m. When skis of 6.6 ft/2.0 m
length are loaded, the overall capacity of the ski
bag is reduced due to its tapered design.

Loading

Ensure that the skis are clean when they are
loaded into the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to
prevent damage.

1. Fold down the center panel in the rear seat
   backrest.

2. Press the button, reach into the recess and
   fold down the cover. To stabilize the cover
   in the folded-down position, place the cen-
   ter panel underneath it.

3. Open the Velcro fastener, spread the ski
   bag between the front seats and insert the
   skis or snowboards.

4. Attach the hook of the ski bag retaining
   strap to the eyelet on the side of the ski bag
   opening.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

⚠️ Secure the ski bag in the manner described; otherwise, it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

Removing the ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to use other inserts.

1. Fold down the center panel in the rear seat backrest.
2. Pull the handle, arrow **1**.
3. Pull out the insert, arrow 2.

▷ For more information on the various inserts available, contact your BMW center.◀

Convertible: through-loading opening with integrated transport bag

The transport bag is designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the transport bag you can stow skis up to a length of 6.6 ft/2.0 m. When skis of 6.6 ft/2.0 m length are loaded, the overall capacity of the ski bag is reduced due to its tapered design.

⚠️ When using the transport bag, it is not permissible to transport passengers in the rear seats.◀

Loading

1. Pull the grip in the filler piece of the rear backrest up and take out the filler piece.
2. Place the filler piece onto the seat cushion with the backrest side facing up.

3. In the trunk: press the two recesses together and fold down the cover.

4. Release the strap, lay out the transport bag between the front seats and load it.

The zip fastener makes objects in the ski bag easier to reach.

Ensure that the skis are clean when you load them into the transport bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the transport bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

⚠️ Secure the transport bag in the manner described; otherwise, it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

To store the transport bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. Please follow the instructions below in order to achieve the optimal service life and economy of operation for your vehicle.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed an engine speed of 4,500 rpm or a road speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode.

After driving 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Engine and vehicle speeds can be gradually increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive cautiously during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive cautiously during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on several factors. You can lower fuel consumption and the environmental impact by taking certain measures, adjusting your driving style and having the vehicle serviced regularly.

Remove any unneeded cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove any mounted parts after you have finished using them

Remove unneeded additional mirrors, the roof rack and the rear luggage rack after use. Mounted parts affect the vehicle's aerodynamics and increase fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass roof

An open glass roof or window causes higher air resistance and thus increases fuel consumption.

Check tire inflation pressure regularly

Check the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before embarking on a long journey, and correct it if necessary.

Low tire inflation pressure causes higher rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

Set off immediately

Do not let the engine warm up while the car is still standing, but set off immediately at moderate engine speed. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Drive defensively

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking maneuvers. To do so, keep an adequate distance between you and the vehicle in front of you. A defensive and smooth driving style keeps fuel consumption down.

Avoid high engine speeds

Use first gear only for driving off. In second and higher gears, accelerate without hesitation or pauses. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and coast to a stop in the highest applicable gear.

On a downhill slope, take your foot off the accelerator and coast in a suitable gear.

The fuel supply is interrupted when coasting.

Switch off the engine during lengthy stops

Switch off the engine when stopping for lengthy periods, e.g. at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestions.

Switch off functions you do not need at the moment

Functions such as the air conditioner, seat heating or rear window defroster draw large amounts of power and consume additional fuel. Especially in city traffic and in stop-and-go driving they have a considerable impact. Therefore, switch these functions off when they are not really needed.

Have the vehicle serviced

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve good economy and a long vehicle life. BMW recommends having the vehicle serviced at your BMW center. Also note the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 237.

General driving notes

Close the trunk lid

Only drive with the trunk closed. Failure to do so may endanger passengers or other road users or may damage the vehicle in the event of an accident or a braking and evasive maneuver. In addition, exhaust gas may flow into the passenger compartment.◀

If special circumstances make it absolutely necessary to drive with the trunk open:

1. Close all windows and the glass roof.
2. Greatly increase the air volume of the automatic climate control system, refer to page 109.
3. Drive cautiously.

Hot exhaust system

In all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated in the exhaust sys-

tem. Do not remove the heat shields installed in its vicinity, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, with the risk of serious personal injuries and property damage. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise, there is a risk of burns.◀

Mobile phones in the vehicle

It is not advisable to use wireless devices such as mobile phones inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an external aerial. Otherwise, it is not possible to exclude the possibility of a reciprocal interference occurring between the vehicle electronics and the wireless device. Otherwise, there is no assurance that the radiation generated by the radio transmission will be conveyed out of the passenger compartment.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This situation, known as hydroplaning, means that the tire can completely lose contact with the road surface, so that neither the car can be steered nor the brake be properly applied.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases with declining tread depth on the tires, refer also to Minimum tread depth on page 229.

Driving through water

Drive through water on the road only if it is not deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Use the parking brake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle for a lengthy period using the clutch; use the

parking brake instead. Otherwise, greater clutch wear will result.◀

For more information about the drive-off assistant, refer to page 91.

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations in which this is necessary. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Objects in the movement range of the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpet, and other objects out of the movement range of the pedals; otherwise, they may inhibit the function of the pedals during driving.
Do not place additional floor mats onto an existing one or onto other objects.
Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be appropriately fastened. Make sure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they have been removed, e.g. for cleaning.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the

gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, all the way to first gear if necessary. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. Downshifting in manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 65.

⚠ Sport automatic transmission with double clutch: never drive with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; otherwise, there will be no engine braking action and no power assistance to the brakes and steering. Manual transmission: never drive with the clutch held down, with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; otherwise, there will be no engine braking action and no power assistance to the brakes and steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area around the pedals; otherwise, pedal function could be impaired.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When the vehicle is parked

Condensation forms while the automatic climate control is in operation, and then exits

under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Cargo loading

⚠ To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. In some situations, this can result in sudden loss of tire pressure.◀

⚠ Avoid fluid spills in the trunk as they could damage the vehicle.◀

Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:

   ⚠ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur and unstable driving conditions may result.◀

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150-lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs:
1,400 lbs minus 750 lbs = 650 lbs.

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load

The permissible load is the sum of the occupants' weights and the weight of the cargo. The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

Coupe

Convertible

Storing cargo

▷ Position heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible, ideally directly behind the respective seat backrests.

▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.

▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.

Securing cargo

▷ Secure smaller and lighter items using draw straps.

▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. To attach the cargo straps, there are two lashing eyes on the inside wall of the trunk.
Comply with the information enclosed with the load-securing devices.

⚠ Always position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endan-

ger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or swerving is necessary.

Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 261, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be thrown around, for example as a result of heavy braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.

Only attach the cargo straps using the lashing eyes shown in the illustration. Do not secure cargo with the anchors for tether straps, refer to page 59, otherwise, these could be damaged.◀

Coupe: roof-mounted luggage rack

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Comply with the directions given in the installation instructions.

Mounting points

Fold open the cover.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.
You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the applicable data under Weights on page 261.

The roof load must be distributed uniformly and should not be too large in area. Heavy items should always be placed at the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting the glass roof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the trunk lid.

Fasten roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can
enter destinations and specify your route
so that your navigation system guides you
reliably to your destination.

Navigation system

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.

⚠️ Enter data only with the vehicle stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

Accessing navigation system

1. 🔲 Press the button.
2. "Navigation"

🔲 The navigation system can also be accessed directly with the button on the controller.

Navigation data

General information

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your BMW center. Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

▷ Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.

▷ Update data while driving to reduce the drain on the battery.

▷ Only the main functions of the navigation system are available during updating.

The update is resumed automatically when a trip is continued after an interruption.

▷ You can inquire as to the status of the update.

▷ The data are stored in the vehicle.

▷ After the update, the system restarts.

▷ The medium that holds the navigation data can be removed after the update is completed.

Information about navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version": Information about the data version is displayed.

Updating the navigation data

Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press ⏏ button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

2. Remove the DVD.

Querying status

1. OPTION Press the button.

2. "Navigation update"

Destination entry

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

In entering your destination you can select from the following options:

▷ Entering a destination manually, see below

▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 136

▷ Last destinations, refer to page 137

▷ Special destinations, refer to page 138

▷ Entering a destination on the map, refer to page 139

▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 137

▷ Destination entry via voice, refer to page 140

▷ Destination entry via BMW Assist, refer to page 139

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 24.

Entering a destination manually

To make it easier to enter town/city names and street names, the system assists you with automatic name completion and entry comparison, refer to page 143. This makes it possible to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored town/city names and street names can be accessed

quickly.

1.   ![MENU] Press the button.

2.   "Navigation"

3.   "Enter address"

The system also supports you with the following features:

▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.

▷ You can skip the entry of state/province and town/city if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Entering a state/province

1.   "Navigation"

2.   "Enter address"

3.   Select "State/Province" or displayed country.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.

2. Select letters, if necessary.
   The list is reduced in steps with each entry.

   To delete letters:

   ▷ To delete individual letters:
   Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller.

   ▷ To delete all letters:
   Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller for an extended period.

   To enter spaces:

   ▷ Select the ⌴ symbol.

   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

3. Move the controller to the right.

4. Select the name of the town/city from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.

2. Highlight the town/city.

3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.

2. Select the 1@+ symbol.

3. Select the digits.

4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.

5. Highlight the entry.

6. Select an entry.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or displayed street.

2. Enter the street and cross-street the same way you entered the town/city.

After you enter the street, you can also enter the cross street or the house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Change to the list of street names.

2. Highlight street.

3. Select the street.

Alternative: entering street and house number

1. Select "Street" or displayed street.

2. Enter the street the same way you entered the town/city.

3. "House number"

4. Select the digits.

5. Change to the list of house numbers.

6. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

No such street at the destination

The desired street is not in the entered town/city because it belongs to another district of the town/city.

1. "Navigation"

2. "Enter address"

3. Select "Street" or displayed street.

4. Change to the list of street names.

5. Select "In" displayed country.

All streets of the entered country are offered. The corresponding town/city is displayed after the street name.

6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight street.
9. Select the street.

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination", refer to page 142.
▷ Setting "Route preference", refer to page 143.
▷ Search for "Points of Interest at loc.", refer to page 138.

Address book

To create contacts, refer to page 212.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
   Contacts with addresses are displayed if these addresses have been checked as destinations.

   If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone are not displayed, they first need to be checked as destinations, refer to page 202.

3. Select a contact in the list or if so desired, using the "A-Z search".
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address"

Storing a destination in the address book

Store the destination in the address book after entering the destination.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. 🐾 "Guidance"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".

6. Select an existing contact, if available.
7. "Business address" or "Home address"
8. "Last name" and "First name" if you wish.
9. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

Your current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact".

4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".

Using the home address as a destination

The home address must be created. Specifying a home address, refer to page .

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

3. "Home"

4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

The last destinations are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Opening the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"

3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, for example, to change the house number of an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".

5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations
1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or
   "Delete all last destinations".

Special destinations

General information
Even with the most up-to-date navigation data, information about certain special destinations may have changed; for example, filling stations may not be in operation.

Opening the search for special destinations
1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

The search can be narrowed by entering the location and type of special destination.

Searching online
1. "Google™ Local Search"
2. Select the special destination.
3. Select the 🌐 symbol.
4. "Start guidance"

Special destination location
As you input the search destination, you can select from among various options.
▷ "At current location"
▷ "At destination"
▷ "At different location"
▷ "Along route"

A-Z search
1. "A-Z search"
2. "Town/City"
3. Select or enter town/city.
4. "Category"
5. Select category.
6. "Category details"
   For some special destinations, it is possible to select several category details.
   Move the controller toward the left to exit category details.
7. "Keyword"
8. Enter keyword.

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.
9. Select the special destination.

   Details are displayed.

   If several details are stored, then you can scroll through the pages.

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.
10. Select the 🌐 symbol.
11. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination". Adding destination as another destination, refer to page .

"Start search": without entering a search term, the search is repeated with the last stored search term.

Category search
1. "Category search"
2. "Town/City"
3. Select or enter town/city.
4. "Category"
5. Select category.
6. "Category details"
   For some special destinations, it is possible to select several category details.
   Move the controller toward the left to exit category details.

7. "Start search"

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.

8. Select the special destination.

   Details are displayed.

   If several details are stored, then you can scroll through the pages.

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

9. Select the 🌐 symbol.

10. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination". Adding destination as another destination, refer to page 142.

Displaying special destinations

List of special destinations: the special destinations are displayed in order of their distance and are displayed with a direction arrow pointing toward the destination.

With the Professional navigation system: In the split screen, special destinations from the selected category are displayed as symbols in the map view. The display depends on the map scale and the category.

Destination entry via BMW Assist

A connection to the BMW Concierge service is established, refer to page 213.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".

4. "Display Points of Interest"

5. Select the settings.

Destination entry via map

If you only know the location of a destination or street, then you can enter the destination with the aid of the map.

Selecting the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The current position of the vehicle is displayed on the map.

3. ⊕ "Interactive map"

4. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.

   ▷ To change the scale: turn the controller.

   ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.

   ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

5. Press the controller to display additional menu items.

   ▷ Select the 🌺 symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".

   ▷ "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street, it displays one of the following pieces of information:

▷ A street name in the vicinity.

▷ The district.

▷ The coordinates of the destination.

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. In addition, pressing the controller makes further functions available:

   ▷ Select the 🌺 symbol.
   "Start guidance" or "
   Add as another destination"

   ▷ "Exit interactive map":
   Go back to the map view.

   ▷ "View in northern direction" or "View in driving direction"

   ▷ "Display destination": the section of the map around the destination is displayed.

   ▷ "Display current location":
   The section of the map around the current position is displayed.

   ▷ "Find points of interest", refer to page 138.

Destination entry via voice

General information

For instructions on the voice activation system, refer to page 26.

▷ During the destination entry by voice, you can switch between voice operation and entry via iDrive at any time. To do so, reactivate the voice activation system if necessary.

▷ Having the possible spoken commands read aloud: ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries

▷ With the Professional navigation system: City/town, street, and house number can be entered with a single command.

▷ Countries, towns and cities, streets and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled in the system language, refer to page 87.

   Example: to enter a destination in a US state as a complete word, the system language must be English.

▷ Spell the entry if the language spoken in the area is different from the system language.

▷ Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.

▷ The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and on the country and language settings.

Entering an address in a command

1. Press the 🔘 button on the steering wheel.

   2. ›Enter address‹

3. Wait for a request from the system.

4. Say the address aloud in the suggested order.

5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g. the town/city.

Entering a town/city

The town/city name can be spoken as a complete word or spelled.

With the destination entry menu displayed:

1. Press the [icon] button on the steering wheel.
2. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
3. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
4. Say the name of the town/city or say at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.

5. Select a location:

   ▷ To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹

   ▷ To select other town/city: ›New entry‹

   ▷ To select an entry, e.g. ›Entry …‹

   ▷ To spell an entry: ›Spell city‹

6. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

Towns/cities that sound the same are compiled in a separate list and are displayed as one town/city followed by three dots.

1. Select an entry:
2. ›Yes‹ or ›Entry …‹ e.g. entry 2.
2. Select the desired town/city.

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: turn the controller until the town/city is selected and press the controller.

Entering a street or intersection

The street or intersection is entered in the same manner as the town/city.

Entering a house number

Depending on the data in the navigation system, house numbers up to the number 2,000 can be entered:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
   Say each digit separately.
3. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Planning a trip with intermediate destinations

New trip

A trip can be planned using intermediate destinations.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. [icon] "Guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry.

7. Enter the intermediate destination.
8. "Start guidance"

Entering intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry.
3. Enter the intermediate destination.
4. "Add as another destination"
   The intermediate destination is inserted into the destination list and highlighted.
5. Turn the controller until the intermediate destination is at the desired place in the list.
6. Press the controller.

Starting the trip

After entering all intermediate destinations, highlight the first destination and say "Start guidance"

For example if the second destination is highlighted at the start of route guidance, then the first destination is skipped over.

The 🏁 symbol indicates the active intermediate destination.

Storing a trip

Up to 30 trips can be stored in the trip list. Delete existing trips as necessary to permit you to store new trips.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter a name.
4. "OK"

The trip is stored in the trip list under the entered name.

Selecting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Trips, changing

Changing the trip direction

Intermediate destinations are displayed in reverse order in the list.

1. "Map"
2. 🏁 "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Options for intermediate destinations

1. "Map"
2. 🏁 "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip destinations"
4. Select an intermediate destination.
   ▷ "Edit destination"
   ▷ "Reposition dest. in the trip": move the intermediate destination within the list.
   ▷ "Delete dest. in the trip"
   ▷ "Go to next dest. in the trip"

Some options are not possible for some trips.

Deleting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip".

Selecting last trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. "Last trip"
4. 🏁 "Start guidance"

Destination guidance

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Entering a destination, refer to page 134.
3. "Accept destination"
4. "Start guidance"

The route is displayed on the Control Display after it is calculated.

In the map view, the distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed.

The arrow display appears on the Control Display, if so desired.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. 🐾"Guidance".
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

▷ You can influence the calculated route by selecting certain trip criteria.

▷ Route criteria can be changed during destination entry and during route guidance.

▷ Street types are part of the navigation data and are taken into account in route planning, e.g. avoiding highways.

▷ The proposed route can differ from personal experience.

▷ The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

▷ Route guidance with traffic bulletins, refer to page 149.

Changing route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. ⏱ /⛰ 🛫 "Route preference"
4. Selecting a criterion:
   ▷ ⏱"Fast route": time-optimized route through a combination of the least possible distance and stretches of road that allow rapid driving.
   ▷ /⛰"ECO PRO route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest possible route.
   ▷ 🛫"Short route": short distance without taking time into account.
   ▷ "Alternative routes": are suggested, where possible, during active route guidance.
   The individual suggestions are labeled in color.

5. Select additional route criteria, if desired. Where possible, the selected criteria will be avoided on the route.

    ▷ "Avoid highways": highways are avoided where possible.

    ▷ "Avoid toll roads": toll roads are avoided where possible.

    ▷ "Avoid ferries": ferries are avoided where possible.

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

Route

General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various views of the route are available during route guidance:

▷ Arrow display on the Control Display.

▷ List of route segments.

▷ Map view, refer to page .

Arrow display

The following information is displayed during route guidance:

▷ Large arrow: current direction of travel.

▷ Small arrow: indicates the next change of direction.

▷ Intersection view.

▷ Lane information.

▷ Traffic bulletins.

▷ Distance to the next change of direction.

▷ Street name of the next change of direction.

Lane information

In the arrow display, the recommended lanes of multi-lane roads are each marked with a triangle.

▷ Filled triangle: optimum lane.

▷ Empty triangle: likewise possible lane. It can, however, also be possible to briefly make additional lane changes.

Displaying the list of route segments

If the route guidance has been started, then you can display a list of route segments. The distance to be traveled and traffic bulletins are displayed for each segment of the route.

1. "Navigation"

2. "Route information"

3. Highlight the route segment.

The route segment is displayed in the preview map.

Bypassing a section of the route

During route guidance, prompt the navigation system to bypass certain route segments. In doing so, you will specify how many kilometers to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"

2. "Route information"

3. "New route for"

4. Turn the controller: enter the desired mileage.

5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for"
4. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendations

The remaining range is calculated and filling stations along the route are displayed.

Even with the most up-to-date navigation data, information about certain special destinations may have changed; for example, filling stations may not be in operation.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
   A list of filling stations is displayed.
4. Select a gas station.
5. Select the 🐾 symbol.
6. "Start guidance": route guidance to the selected filling station is started.

   "Add as another destination": the filling station is incorporated into the route.

Destination guidance through voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during destination guidance.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. 📢 📢 "Voice instructions"

For rapid access, the feature can be stored on a programmable memory key, refer to page .

Repeating a voice instruction

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the 📢 symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Adjusting volume for voice instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Have the last voice instruction repeated, if necessary.
2. Turn the button during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Map view

Displaying the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

Overview

1 Toolbar
2 Route segment with traffic obstruction
3 Road sign for traffic obstruction
4 Planned route
5 Current location
6 Upper status box
7 Lower status box

Lines on the map

Streets and roads are depicted with different colors and lines according to their classification. Dotted lines represent railroad and ferry connections. National borders are depicted with thin lines.

Traffic obstructions

Small triangles along the planned route identify route segments with traffic obstructions, depending on map scale. The direction of the triangles indicates the direction of the obstruction.

Road signs classify the obstructions.

▷ Red road sign: the obstruction relates to the planned route or direction of travel.

▷ Gray road sign: the obstruction does not relate to the planned route or direction of travel.

Traffic bulletins, refer to page .

Planned route

After route guidance is started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

Status boxes

Show/hide: press the controller.

▷ Upper status box: time, phone details, and entertainment details.

▷ Lower status box: symbol for active route guidance, traffic bulletin status, arrival time, and distance from destination.

Toolbar

The following functions are available directly in the map view:

Symbol	Function
🕊 🕊	Starting/stopping destination guidance
🔊 🔇	Switching voice instructions on/off
⏱ /⋔ ↗	Changing route criteria or selecting route alternatives
❄	Special destinations
⚠	Displaying traffic bulletins
⊕	Interactive map
◐ ◑ ⊿N	Map view settings
⊄	Changing scale

Changing the map section

⊕ "Interactive map"

▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.

▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing scale

1. Select the ⊄ symbol.
2. Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Automatic scaling of the map

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until AUTO is displayed as the map scale.
The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

Settings for the map view

The map is shown on the Control Display.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Settings"

Set the optimized map view.

▷ "Day/night mode"
Select and adjust depending on light conditions.

"Traffic conditions/gray map" active:
Settings are not taken into account.

▷ "Satellite images"
Depending on the availability and resolution, satellite images are displayed in scales of approx. 1 mile to 600 miles/2 km to 1,000 km.

▷ "Perspective view in 3D"
Displays a three-dimensional view. Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.

▷ "Traffic conditions/gray map"
The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Map view for the split screen display

The map view for the split screen can be selected separately from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
4. Select "Split screen content" or scale.
5. Select the map view:
   ▷ "Arrow display"
   ▷ "Map facing north"
   ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   ▷ "Map view with perspective"
   ▷ "Position"
   ▷ "Exit ramp view"
   ▷ "Traffic conditions/gray map"
6. To change the scale: switch to the split screen and turn the controller.

Traffic bulletins

Overview

▷ You can display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TMC (Traffic Message Channel) of a traffic information service. Bulletins about traffic obstructions and hazards are continuously updated.

▷ Traffic bulletins are indicated by symbols on the map.

▷ Traffic bulletins for the surrounding area are stored in a list.

⚠ The symbol in the toolbar of the map view turns red if a traffic bulletin relates to the calculated route.

Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unautho-

rized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to license "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. nor BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

Activating/deactivating reception

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Receive Traffic Info"

Accessing traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. ⚠ "Traffic Info"

   First, the traffic bulletins for the calculated route are displayed.

   The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
4. Select a traffic bulletin.

   🔍"More information":
   Display additional information.
5. Scroll to the next or previous traffic bulletin if desired.

Traffic bulletins on the map

"Traffic conditions/gray map" active: the Control Display changes to a grayscale display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. Symbols or special destinations are no longer displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic conditions/gray map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction and impact are displayed on the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

▷ Red: traffic congestion
▷ Orange: stop-and-go traffic

▷ Yellow: heavy traffic

▷ Green: clear roads

▷ Gray: general traffic information, e.g. construction zone

The bulletins displayed depend in the respective traffic information service.

Filtering traffic bulletins

Set which traffic bulletins are displayed on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.

Traffic bulletins from the selected categories are displayed on the map.

▷ Traffic bulletins that lie on the route are always shown.

▷ For your personal safety, it is not possible to hide traffic bulletins that announce a potential hazard.

Route guidance with traffic bulletins

Semi-dynamic route guidance

With traffic bulletin reception switched on, semi-dynamic route guidance is active.

The system takes into account the existing traffic bulletins during route guidance. A message is displayed as a function of the route, the traffic bulletins, and the possible alternate routes. In

the event of a traffic obstruction, an alternate route will be suggested if possible.

The upper part of the message shows:

▷ The symbol of the first traffic obstruction, possibly with the remaining distance before the start of the traffic obstruction.

▷ Total length of traffic obstructions on the route.

▷ Extension of driving time due to the traffic obstructions

The lower part of the message shows:

▷ Suggested alternate route with remaining distance before the start of the alternate route.

▷ Difference of the route length compared to the original route.

▷ Time gained by taking the alternate route compared to the original route with the traffic obstructions.

In addition to the original route displayed in white, the split screen will also show the alternate route.

Taking an alternate route:

 "Detour"

With particular hazards, e.g. objects on the roadway, a message is displayed without a possible alternate route.

It is also possible to take alternate routes can also be taken if the traffic reports are accessed via the list:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Traffic Info"
4. "Detour information"
5. "Detour"

Dynamic destination guidance

The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions.

▷ The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.

▷ Traffic bulletins will continue to be displayed on the map.

▷ Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

▷ Certain hazards are displayed regardless of the setting.

To activate dynamic route guidance:

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

What to do if …

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

What to do if…

▷ The current position cannot be displayed? The position is in an unrecognized region, in a poor reception area, or the system is in the process of determining the position. Reception is generally available when you are in the open.

▷ The destination guidance does not accept a destination without a street name? A downtown area cannot be determined for the town or city that has been entered. Input any street in the selected town/city and start destination guidance.

▷ The destination guidance does not accept a destination? The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.

▷ The letters for a destination cannot be selected during destination entry? The stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.

▷ The map view is displayed in grayscale? "Traffic conditions/gray map" active: the Control Display changes to a grayscale display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.

▷ Voice instructions are no longer issued before intersections during destination guidance?

The area has not been fully recorded yet, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

Entertainment

Operation of the radio, CD equipment and external audio devices as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

On/off and tone

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

The following audio and video sources share the same control elements and adjustments:

▷ Radio

▷ CD/DVD player

▷ CD changer

▷ Video

▷ External devices, e.g. MP3 player

Controls

The audio and video sources can be controlled using the:

▷ Buttons near the CD/DVD player

▷ iDrive

▷ Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page

▷ Programmable memory keys, refer to page

▷ Voice activation system

Buttons near the CD/DVD player

1 Sound output for entertainment on/off, volume

 ▷ Press: switch on/off
  When you switch on the unit, the last set radio station or track is played.

 ▷ Turn: adjusting the volume

2 ⏏ Eject the CD/DVD

3 CD/DVD drive

4 **FM / AM**: change the radio station waveband

5 **MODE**: change the audio and video sources

6 ◁ ▷ Station scan/track search

 ▷ Change the radio station

 ▷ Select the track for the CD/DVD player, CD changer and certain multimedia devices

Switching on/off

To switch the entertainment audio output on or off:
Press knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player.

⛝ This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

The sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition was switched off. For sound output, switch the unit back on.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player until the desired volume is obtained.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 13.

Setting tone controls

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, fader

▷ "Treble": treble adjustment.

▷ "Bass": bass adjustment.

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".

2. "Tone"

3. Select the desired tone setting.

4. To adjust: turn the controller.

5. To store: press the controller.

Equalizer

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".

2. "Tone"

3. "Equalizer"

4. Select the desired setting.

5. To adjust: turn the controller.

6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, surround

You can choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".

2. "Tone"

3. "Surround"

When surround is activated, multi-channel playback is simulated when playing an audio track in stereo.

Volume levels

▷ "Speed volume": volume is adapted depending on the speed

▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC acoustic signal relative to the entertainment sound output

▷ "Gong": volume of the acoustic signal, e.g. for the acoustic Safety Belt Reminder relative to the entertainment sound output

▷ "Microphone": volume of the microphone during a phone conversation.

▷ "Loudspeak.": volume of the speaker during a phone conversation.

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.

5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default setting.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Radio

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

Your radio is designed for reception of the following stations:

▷ FM and AM

▷ HD Radio

▷ Satellite radio

Selecting a station

Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

1. "Radio"

2. "FM" or "AM"

3. Select the desired station.

The selected station is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing stations

Turn the controller and press it

or

press the ◄ ► button for the corresponding direction

or

press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 13.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

1. "Radio"

2. "FM" or "AM"

3. "Manual"

4. Select the frequency: turn the controller.

To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

Renaming a radio station

An FM station with changing station names can be renamed.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename to:"

   If necessary, wait until the desired name appears.

The selected station name is added to the list of current stations and stored stations.

Storing stations

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.

4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store a station on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 24.

1. Select a station.
2. 　1　 ... 　6　 Press and hold the desired button.

RDS – Radio Data System

In the FM waveband, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio™ reception

Many radio stations transmit analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology is manufactured under U.S. and Foreign Patents licensed from iBiquity Digital Corp. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

⊞⫶ This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

When setting a station that has a digital signal, it may take several seconds before the station plays in digital quality.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, playback switches between analog and digital reception. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

The ⬜ symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. The station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

When reception is poor, the substation is muted for several seconds.

Presets

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing stations

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"

4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can also store the stations on the programmable memory keys, refer to page .

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Satellite radio

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

The channels are offered in fixed packages. Packages must be activated by telephone.

Navigation bar

Symbol	Function
🔄	Changing list view
🔄	Selecting category
🔄	Entering channel directly
⟳	Time shift
☆ ☆	Accessing favorites, selecting the My Favorites category
☆	Managing favorites
⤴	Traffic Jump

The functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page .

Managing subscription

Clear reception is required for activating and deactivating channels. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Activating channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. 🔄 "Category"

4. Select the Unsubscribed Channels category.
5. Select desired channel.
   The telephone number and electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Dial the telephone number to have the channels activated.

This telephone number can also be used to deactivate the channels.

Deactivating channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".

4. "Manage subscription"

The telephone number and electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

5. Call Sirius to deactivate the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to activated channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select desired channel.

Via the button in the area of the CD/DVD player

Press the [◄ ►] button for the corresponding direction.
The next channel is selected.

Using direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ⌕ "Set channel"
4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or a desired category.
4. Select desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Press the controller again to confirm the highlighted channel.

7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can also store the channels on the programmable memory keys, refer to page .

Changing list view

The list view changes each time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information about the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Function
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

Selecting category

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

Time shift

Approximately one hour of the channel currently being listened to is temporarily stored in a cache memory. Prerequisite: the signal must be available.

The stored audio track can be played back at a different time from the live broadcast. If the cache memory is full, then the older tracks are recorded over. The cache memory is deleted if a new channel is selected.

Accessing Time shift

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"

▷ The red arrow indicates the current playback position.

▷ The time difference from the live broadcast is displayed next to the cache memory bar.

▷ For live transmissions: "live".

Time shift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to live broadcast
	Playback/pause
	Next track
	Previous track
	Fast forward
	Reverse
	Automatic time shift deactivated/activated

Automatic time shift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

▷ Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.

▷ Activation of the voice activation system.

▷ Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time delay.

Activating

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"
4. "Automatic time shift"

Deactivating

 "Automatic time shift"

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Possible favorites include artist, track, game, league, and team.

Storing artist, track, or game

Only current broadcasts can be stored as favorites. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select artist, track, or game.

Storing league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ✶ "Manage favorites"
4. "Add sports information"

5. Select the desired league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or a desired team.

Accessing favorites

If an activated favorite is being played, the message "Favorite alert!" appears for approx. 20 seconds.

Select ✶ "Favorites" while the alert message is being displayed.

The displayed favorite will be played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All of the favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing favorites

Activating/deactivating favorites

Favorites can be activated or deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ✶ "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or desired favorites.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ✶ "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the favorites you wish to delete.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region are broadcast at intervals of a few minutes.

Selecting region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Set jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating Jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ⌒ "Jump to:"

As soon as information about the selected region becomes available, it is broadcast.

A new panel appears in the display.

Cancel Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
⌒	Information will be broadcast soon.
⌒	Information is currently being broadcast.

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius carries out an update of the names and positions of the channels. The update occurs automatically and can take several minutes.

Notes

▷ Under some circumstances, reception may not be possible, e.g. under certain environmental or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.

▷ The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages or near trees, mountains, or other powerful sources of radio interference.

CD/DVD player and CD changer

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

CD/DVD playback

Inserting a CD/DVD

Insert the CD/DVD into the drive with the labeled side facing up. The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, it can take several minutes to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

Playable formats

CD/DVD player

▷ DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video

▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA

▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC, M4A

CD changer

▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA

Starting playback

There is a CD/DVD in the CD/DVD player or a CD in the CD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD:

Symbol	Meaning
⊚	CD/DVD player
⊚1 … ⊚6	CD changer

Fill the CD/DVD magazine and insert it, refer to page 169.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

Press the ⏏ button next to the CD/DVD player. The CD/DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

Audio playback

Selecting the track using the button

Press the ◀ ▶ button for the appropriate direction as often as necessary until the desired track is reached.

Selecting a track using iDrive

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the directory, if necessary.
   To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.

5. Select a track and press the controller.

Displaying information about the track

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

▷ Artist
▷ Album title
▷ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD
▷ Track file name

Random sequence playback, Random

The tracks on the current CD/DVD are played once in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".

5. "Random"

CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: all the tracks in the selected directory are played in random order.

Random mode is switched off when the audio source is changed or the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the [◄ ►] button for the corresponding direction.

Video playback

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on your DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Starting playback

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and in some market-specific versions, only with the parking brake engaged or the selector lever of the automatic transmission is in the park position.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. **DVD** "DVD menu"

5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD/DVD with video content.
4. 🔊 "Select track"
5. Select the desired track.

The CD/DVD is started.

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

The Video menu is displayed:

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu
▷	Starting playback
❙❙	Pause
☐	Stop

Symbol	Function
▷|	Next chapter/next track
|◁	Previous chapter/previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the Video menu.
2. 📀 "DVD menu"
   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.
▷ To select menu items: move and press the controller.
▷ To change to the Video menu: turn the controller and select "Back".

DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; also refer to the information on your DVD.

Language

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"

4. Select the desired language.

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

Subtitles

Subtitles can be selected if they are contained on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".

Brightness, contrast, color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed, and then press the controller.

Zoom

Display the video image on the full screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".

3. "Additional options"

4. "Zoom mode"

Selecting track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller when the DVD menu is displayed.

2. Open "Options".

3. "Additional options"

4. "Select title"

5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. 🔊 "Select track"

2. Select the desired track.

Camera angle

The camera angle depends on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.

2. Open "Options".

3. "Additional options"

4. "Viewing angle"

5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

CD changer

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is behind the left side panel in the trunk.

Removing the CD magazine

To insert or remove CDs from the CD magazine, you must first remove it from the CD changer:

1. Push the cover to one side, arrow 1.

2. Press the button, arrow **2**.
   The CD magazine will be ejected.

Push the magazine back in after at least 2 seconds have passed so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs from the CD magazine

When loading CDs into or removing them from the CD magazine, hold them at their edges and do not touch the reflective signal-sensing area.

Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD per compartment with the labeled side up.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired compartment and take out the CD.

Inserting the CD magazine

Insert the CD magazine all the way in the direction of arrow **1** and close the cover, arrow 2.

The CD changer automatically reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. CD singles; otherwise, the CDs or the adapter might jam and no longer eject.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}; otherwise, the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some

instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this may be due to one of the following reasons

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, for example, inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the top, with a pen designed for this purpose.

Damage

Avoid leaving fingerprints, as well as dust, scratches or moisture on the CDs/DVDs.
Keep CDs/DVDs in protective sleeves or cases. Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures above 122 ºF /50 ºC, nor to high humidity levels or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered U.S. patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Unless otherwise

agreed with Macrovision, media with this protection may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

DTS Digital Surround™

Manufactured under license of US patent numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other patents granted and pending in both the USA and worldwide. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Music collection

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Storing music

The music tracks from CDs, DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection in the vehicle and played from there.

▷ Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format when they are stored. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.

▷ CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. After storing, the tracks and directories can be deleted individually. Files are only stored in the WMA, MP3, M4A, and AAC formats.
Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored in the vehicle but cannot be played back.

⚠ Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disc.◀

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote® is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. This product and service may prac-

tice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 5.987.525, 6.061.680, 6.154.773, 6.161.132, 6.230.192, 6.230.207, 6.240.459 and 6.330.593 as well as other granted or pending patents. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: 6.304.523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Storing files from CDs/DVDs

CDs/DVDs can only be stored from the CD/DVD player.

1. Insert a CD/DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the ⚙ symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"

The music collection is displayed.
The tracks are stored and played back in sequence from the music collection.

Observe the following during the storage process:
Do not switch back to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player; otherwise, the storage process will be interrupted.
You can switch to the other audio sources with-

out interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD can also be called up, if they have been stored already.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the 🔘 symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

The storing of the CD/DVD continues at the beginning of the track at which storing was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

▷ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.

▷ Unsuitable devices: USB hard drive, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone.
Music from Apple iPods/iPhones can be played via the USB audio interface in the center armrest.

▷ File systems: popular file systems for USB devices are supported. The format FAT 32 is recommended.

▷ Music from a USB device can be stored only via the USB interface in the glove compartment. ◀

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

Playing music

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music

search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"

4. Select the desired category.

5. To select the desired entry:
   ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired input.

   or

   ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select additional categories if desired. The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.
   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

The list of tracks is automatically repeated.

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search by voice

For instructions on the voice activation system, refer to page 26.

1. Press the [icon] button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g. ›Select artist‹ .
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select additional categories if desired.

To select a track directly:

›Title …‹

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in one command.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search or the album selected last.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Current playback"

4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

List of the 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates. Symbols indicate the format.

Symbol	Format
◎	Audio CD
▱	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.

4. To select tracks, change directories if needed. To go up one level in the directory, move the controller to the left.

Random sequence playback, Random

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".

4. "Random"

Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is unknown, it can be changed later.

An album cannot be renamed while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"

6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from it is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track and directory

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from it is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track".

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB medium. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Start the engine.
2. Connect the USB medium to the USB interface in the glove compartment, refer to page 116.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"

5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"

7. "Backup music on USB"

Restoring the music collection in the vehicle

⚠️ When storing from the USB device, the music collection existing in the vehicle is replaced.◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Overview

Symbol	Meaning
🖋	AUX-In connection
�	USB audio interface
🎷	Music interface for smartphones
⑧	Bluetooth audio

AUX-IN port

Overview

▷ It is possible to connect audio devices, e.g. MP3 players. Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

▷ Recommended settings: mid-level tone and volume settings on the audio device. Tone may depend on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm

The AUX-In connection is in the center armrest.

Connect the headphone connection or line-out connection of the device to the jack plug.

Playback

1. Connect the audio device, switch it on, and using the audio device, select a track.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "External devices" if applicable
4. 🖋 "AUX front"

Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

Volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices" if applicable
3. 🖋 "AUX front"

4. "Volume"

5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and then press the controller.

USB audio interface/Music interface for smartphones

Overview

It is possible to connect external audio devices. They can be operated via iDrive. Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

Options for connecting external devices

▷ Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g. MP3 player, USB flash drive, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.

▷ Connection via snap-in adapter if the vehicle is equipped with a music interface for smartphones: Apple iPhone or mobile phones. Playback may only be possible when no device is connected to the AUX-IN port.

Because of the large number of audio devices available on the market, an operation via the vehicle cannot be guaranteed for every audio device/mobile phone.
Ask your BMW center for suitable audio devices/mobile phones.

File systems

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. The format FAT 32 is recommended.

Audio files

Playback of standard audio files is possible:

▷ MP3

▷ WMA

▷ WAV (PCM)

▷ AAC, M4A

▷ Playback lists: M3U, WPL, PLS

Connection via the USB audio interface.

Lift up the center armrest.

1 AUX-IN port for audio playback: TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm.

2 USB interface

Apple iPod/iPhone

Use a flexible adapter cable for the connection. Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone to the USB interface **2**.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

USB device

To protect the USB interface and USB device from mechanical damage, connect them with a flexible adapter cable.

Connect the USB device to the USB interface **2**.

After initial connection

Information about all tracks, e.g. artist or music style and the playlists are imported into the vehicle. It can take some time, depending on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be accessed via the file directory.

Number of tracks

The data from up to four USB devices or for approx. 36,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 36,000 tracks are stored, then the data of existing tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the 🔌 or 🎧 symbol.

Playback begins with the first track.

The CD cover that belongs to the track appears on the Control Display, possibly after a few seconds.

Track search

Selection is possible via:

▷ Playback lists

▷ Information: music style, artist; if applicable, composer, album, track.

▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory; if applicable, composer.

Track titles are displayed if they have been stored in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the 🔌 or 🎧 symbol.
4. 🔍 "Search"
5. Select desired category, e.g. "Genre", "Artist".

   All entries are displayed in a list.

   ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired input. When a letter is entered, the results are filtered using this letter as the first letter. If multiple letters are entered, all results that contain that sequence are displayed.

   ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.

6. Select additional categories if desired.

   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.

7. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

To open playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the 🔌 or 🎧 symbol.
4. 🎵 "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ⬦ or 🎥 symbol.
4. 🔊 "Current playback"

Random play sequence

The current list of tracks is played in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the ◀ ▶ button.

Video playback

Overview

Video playback possible via snap-in adapter. They can be operated via iDrive. Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

Playback

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and in some market-specific versions, only with the parking brake engaged or the selector lever of the automatic transmission is in the park position.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the 🎥 symbol.
4. 🎞 "Video"
5. Select the directory, if necessary.

   To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.

6. Select the desired video file to begin playback.

Video menu

Symbol	Format
▷|	Next video file
◁|	Previous video file
	It may be necessary to click the symbol twice in order to play the previous video file.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

Information on connection

▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a max. power of 500 mA if supported by the device. For this reason, do not connect the device to a charging socket in the vehicle; otherwise, it may not be possible to ensure proper playback.

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.

▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.

▷ Do not use the USB audio interface to recharge external devices.

Bluetooth audio

Overview

▷ It is possible to use Bluetooth to play music files from external devices, e.g. audio devices or mobile phones.

Using a mobile phone as an audio source, refer to page 178.

▷ Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

▷ Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

▷ The volume of the sound output depends on the device. If necessary, change the volume setting on the device.

▷ Up to four external devices can be paired with the vehicle.

Requirements

▷ Suitable device. For information, go to www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

▷ Device operational.

▷ Ignition switched on.

▷ Bluetooth activated in vehicle, refer to page 189, and in the device.

▷ Activating Bluetooth audio, refer to page 189.

▷ Bluetooth presets in the device are required, e.g. connection not confirmed or visible, refer to Owner's Manual for the device.

▷ A number with at least 4 and at most 16 digits has been established as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required once for pairing.

Pairing and connecting

⚠ Only pair the device when the vehicle is stopped; otherwise, inattention may lead to endangerment of passengers or other road users.◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"

2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"

3. "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable

4. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

5. To perform other operations on the device, refer to the owner's manual for the device: e.g. search for and connect Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the device's display.

6. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the device's display.

   You will be prompted by iDrive or the device to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.

7. Enter the passkey and confirm.

8. Select desired functions with which the device is to be connected, e.g. "Audio".

9. "OK"

If the pairing was successful, the device is displayed as connected.

♪ symbol displayed in white: device is active as an audio source.

If the pairing was not successful: what to do if…, refer to page 183.

Connecting a particular device

A device that has already been paired can be connected as an active audio source.

Connection is not possible if a data exchange is currently taking place via a mobile phone that is connected via Bluetooth.

Prerequisite

If necessary, activate the audio connection of the desired device from the list of paired devices.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.
5. Open "Options".
6. "Configure phone"
7. Activate "Audio".
8. "OK"

Connecting a device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.

🎵 symbol displayed in white: device is active as an audio source.

Playback

General information

▷ The display of track information depends on the device.
▷ Operation via the device or iDrive are both possible.
▷ Playback is interrupted if a data exchange is taking place with a mobile phone that is connected via Bluetooth.

Starting playback

1. Connect device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "External devices"
4. Select the ⑧ symbol.

5. Select the desired title from the list.

Playback menu

Depending on the device, all functions may not be available.

Symbol	Function
▷|	Next track
	Fast forward: press and hold the symbol.
◁|	Previous track
	Reverse: press and hold the symbol.

Disconnecting an audio connection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"

3. Select the desired device from the list of connected devices.

4. Open "Options".

5. "Configure phone"

6. "Audio"

7. "OK"

With a mobile phone, only the audio connection is disconnected. All other connections remain active.

Unpairing device

1. "CD/Multimedia"

2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"

3. "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable

4. Highlight the device to be unpaired.

5. Open "Options".

6. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if…

Information about suitable devices is available at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Suitable mobile phones, refer to page 188.

▷ Device not supported by vehicle.

If necessary, perform a software update, refer to page 184.

▷ Device could not be paired or connected.

Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the device and vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the device and via iDrive.

Is the passkey input taking longer than 30 seconds? Repeat the pairing procedure.

Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the device or to the vehicle? If necessary, delete the connections with other devices.

Is the mobile phone in power economy mode or does it only have a small amount of battery charge remaining? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via a charging cable.

Depending on the mobile phone, it may only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and only pair and connect one device.

Is the device no longer responding? Switch the device off and back on again.

Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ No music can be played.

Start the program for playing music files on the device and if necessary, select a track via the device.

Activate and deactivate the radio mute on the radio control panel.

▷ Music files only play quietly.

Adjust volume settings on the device.

▷ Playback is interrupted by the press of a button or other messages on the device.

Switch off key tones and other acoustic signal on the device.

▷ Playback is interrupted by a phone call or traffic report and does not automatically continue.

Activate and deactivate the radio mute on the radio control panel.

▷ Playback is not possible when the mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth audio and at the same time via the extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone.

Disconnect one of the two connections, e.g. the audio connection, refer to page 182, and start playback again.

If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function, please contact Customer Relations or your BMW center.

Software update

The vehicle supports various external devices, depending on the software it is currently using. A software update can enable the vehicle to support, for example, new mobile phones or new external devices.

Software updates and associated, up-to-date instructions are available on the web page www.bmwusa.com/update.

Displaying current version

The currently installed software is displayed.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Show current version"

Select the desired version to display additional information.

Updating software by USB

The software update can only be performed when stopped.

1. Save the file for the software update in the main directory of a USB data storage device.
2. Connect the USB data storage device to the USB audio interface in the center armrest. It is not possible to perform the update using the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "Settings"
4. "Software update"

5. "Update software"

6. "Start update"
7. "OK"

All of the listed software updates are installed.

Restoring to previous version

The software version can be restored to before the last software update.

The restoring to the previous version can only be performed when stopped.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Restore previous version"
4. Select "OK" twice.

All of the listed software updates are removed.

Note

BMW Assist, Office functions, and connected devices may be temporarily unavailable during a software update or while restoring to the previous version. Wait a few minutes until the functions are available once more.

Communications

This chapter describes how to use the telephone, BMW Assist and BMW TeleService.

Telephone

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Overview

The concept

Mobile phones or other external devices, e.g. audio players, can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

After being paired once, when the ignition is switched on, these devices are automatically detected as soon as they are present in the vehicle and can be controlled via iDrive, by the buttons on the steering wheel, and by voice.

Depending on whether they are functioning as a telephone and/or as an audio source, external devices can be used via the vehicle. The telephone functions will be described below. Operation of audio functions, refer to page 180.

Up to four external devices can be paired.

It may be necessary for some functions to be activated by the mobile phone provider or service provider.

⚠️ Only make entries when traffic conditions permit. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. Otherwise, you may endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Snap-in adapter

The snap-in adapter makes it possible:

▷ Accommodate the mobile phone.

▷ Recharge its battery.

▷ Connect it to an external antenna of the vehicle.

  This assures a better network connection and constant sound quality.

Suitable mobile phones

For precise information about which mobile phones and external devices with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation, go to www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Displaying vehicle identification number and software part number

Checking which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation requires the vehicle identification number and software part number. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "Display system information"

With a certain software version, these suitable mobile phones support the vehicle functions described below.

With other mobile phones or software versions, malfunctions may occur.

A mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle should not be operated via the mobile phone keypad; otherwise, malfunctions may occur.

It is possible to perform a software update, refer to page 184.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charging function of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer be carried out.
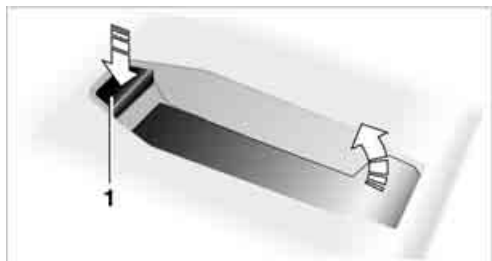
When using the mobile phone via the vehicle, follow the operating instructions of the mobile phone.

Pairing/unpairing mobile phone

General information

The following functions are available:

▷ Using a mobile phone as a telephone.

▷ Using the mobile phone as an auxiliary phone.

▷ Using the mobile phone as an audio source.

▷ Using an audio device as an audio source, refer to page 180.

Requirements

▷ Suitable mobile phone, refer to page 188.

▷ Mobile phone operational.

▷ Bluetooth activated in vehicle, refer to page 191, and in the mobile phone.

▷ Bluetooth presets in the mobile phone are required, e.g. connection not confirmed or visible, refer to Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

▷ Deactivating Bluetooth audio, refer to page 189.

▷ A number with at least 4 and at most 16 digits has been established as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required once for pairing.

▷ Ignition switched on.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth®"

Additional functions

Auxiliary phone

A mobile phone can be used as an auxiliary phone.

Incoming calls to the auxiliary phone can be accepted, refer to page 193. Missed calls to the auxiliary phone are shown in the Control Display.

Office

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, and e-mails are imported from the mobile phone into the vehicle.

Audio source

A mobile phone can be used as an audio source.

Activating/deactivating additional functions

To use these functions in the vehicle, activate them before pairing. For information on suitable mobile phones that support these functions, refer to page 188.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Configure Bluetooth®"

5. Select the desired additional function:
   - ▷ "Additional telephone"
   - ▷ "Office"
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

If an additional function is deactivated, it cannot be assigned to a phone.

Pairing and connecting a device

⚠ Only pair the device when the vehicle is stopped; otherwise, inattention may lead to endangerment of passengers or other road users.◀

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Add new phone"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

4. To perform other operations on the mobile phone, refer to the owner's manual for the device: e.g. search for and connect Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

6. You will be prompted by iDrive or the mobile phone to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.

   Enter the passkey and confirm.

   or

   Compare the control number in the vehicle's display to the control number of the mobile phone. Confirm the control number in the mobile phone and in the vehicle.

   "OK"

7. Select the functions for which the mobile phone is to be used.

8. "OK"

If pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of devices.

Functions supported by the mobile phone and audio device are displayed as symbols during the pairing.

White symbol: function active.

Gray symbol: function inactive.

Symbol	Function
📞	Telephone
📞	Auxiliary phone
🎵	Audio source

Four devices can be paired with the vehicle simultaneously. Three devices can be connected to the vehicle simultaneously.

If the pairing was not successful: what to do if…,

Following the initial pairing

▷ The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

▷ The phone book entries of the telephone that are stored on the SIM card or the mobile phone are imported into the vehicle once the device is detected, depending on the mobile phone.

▷ Four devices can be paired.

▷ Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g. authorization or a secure connection, refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

Connecting a particular device

1. "Telephone"

2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

   All paired devices are listed.

3. Select the device to be connected.

The functions assigned before the unpairing of the device are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. If a device is already connected, then these functions are deactivated if necessary.

Configuring devices

Additional functions can be activated or deactivated in paired and connected devices.

1. "Telephone"

2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

3. Highlight the device to be configured.

4. Open "Options".

5. "Configure phone"

6. Select the desired functions. At least one function must be selected.

   ▷ "Telephone"

   ▷ "Additional telephone"

   ▷ "Audio"

7. "OK"

If a device is assigned a function, this may deactivate the function in an already connected device and cause the other device to be unpaired.

Exchanging the telephone and auxiliary phone

If the telephone and auxiliary phone are connected to the vehicle, the function can be swapped between the two devices.

1. "Telephone"

2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

3. "Swap phone/addit. phone"

Unpairing device

1. "Telephone"

2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

   All paired devices are listed.

3. Highlight the device to be unpaired.

4. Open "Options".

5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

For information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page .

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and in the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and in the mobile phone.

▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.

▷ Is the passkey input taking longer than 30 seconds? Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.

▷ Is the audio connection activated? Deactivate the audio connection.

▷ Is the mobile phone in power economy mode or does it only have a small amount of battery charge remaining? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via a charging cable.

▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it may only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and only pair and connect one device.

Is the mobile phone no longer responding?

▷ Switch the mobile phone off and back on again. Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ Is the ambient temperature too high or too low? Do not subject your mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Telephone functions not possible.

▷ Is the mobile phone paired as an auxiliary phone and is the auxiliary phone function deactivated? Activate the function.

▷ Outgoing call not possible? Connect the mobile phone as a telephone.

Phone book entries are not displayed, not all of them are displayed, or they are displayed incompletely.

▷ The transfer of phone book entries has not yet completed.

▷ In some cases, only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card will be transferred.

▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.

▷ The data volume of the phone book entry is too great, e.g. due to additionally stored information such as notes? Reduce the data volume.

▷ Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source or auxiliary phone? The mobile phone must be connected as a telephone.

The telephone connection quality is low.

▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible to adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal.

▷ Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter or place it in the vicinity of the center console.

▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and speaker separately.

If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function, please check the website www.bmw.com/bluetooth

for further notes or contact Customer Relations or a BMW center.

Operation

Adjusting volume

Turn the knob until the desired volume is reached. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The vehicle automatically adjusts the volume of the microphone on the mobile phone and the volume of the person on the phone with you. Depending on the mobile phone, it may be necessary to adjust the volumes.

Adjustments are only possible during a call and must be carried out separately for each phone. When the telephone is unpaired, this deletes the settings.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. To select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeak."
5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, then the name and number of the contact are dis-

played; otherwise, only the number is displayed.

If a contact is assigned more than one phone number, then only the name of the caller is displayed.

With calls to the auxiliary phone, only the number is displayed if it is transmitted by the network.

An incoming call to a phone is automatically rejected if a call on the other phone is currently active.

Accepting a call

Press the 🌙 button on the steering wheel

or

🌙 "Accept"

Rejecting a call

✂ "Reject"
The caller is connected to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Ending a call

Press the 🌙 button on the steering wheel

or

1. "Telephone"
2. 🐦 "End call"

Entering phone numbers

Dialing a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the ✎ symbol.

It is also possible to enter phone numbers by voice.

Calls with multiple parties

General information

It is possible to switch between two calls or to connect two calls to establish a conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and by the service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone may need to be set for this.

When a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call-waiting signal sounds.

🐦 "Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. 📞 "Hold"

   The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

📞 "Return"

The call on hold is continued.

Switching between two calls, toggling

Active call: highlighted.

The call on hold is identified with: "on hold...".

📞 "Swap calls"

The phone switches to the call on hold.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. 🖧 "Conference call"

When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Muting the microphone

The microphone can be muted in active calls.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. ✖ "Microphone mute"

The muted microphone is automatically activated:

▷ If a new call is made.

▷ When switching between callers on hold.

Keypad dialing

Use keypad dialing to gain access to network services or to control devices, e.g. to remotely access an answering machine. This requires the DTMF code.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select contact from a list or "Dial number"
3. ▦ "Keypad dialing"
4. Enter a DTMF code.

Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts of the telephone and shows all contacts for which a phone number is entered. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts, refer to page 202.

Calling a contact

Symbol	Meaning
✎	Contact with a stored phone number.
⎁	Contact with more than one stored phone number.
✗	Call not possible. The mobile phone has no reception or network or a Service Request is currently active.

Contacts with a stored phone number: select the desired contact. The connection is established.

Contacts with more than one stored phone number: select the desired contact and then select the phone number. The connection is established.

Editing a contact

Changing entries in the "Contacts" menu. If a contact is changed, the changes are not stored in the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialing

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. In some cases, only numbers that were dialed from the vehicle are displayed.

The last 20 phone numbers dialed are displayed. The sorting of the phone numbers depends on the mobile phone.

Dialing the number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"

3. Select the desired entry and phone number, if necessary.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

Deleting entries depends upon the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select contact if necessary.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Received calls

Displaying calls

The list of received calls in the mobile phone is transferred into the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. In some cases, only calls that were received in the vehicle are displayed.

The last 20 calls received are displayed. The sorting and displaying of phone numbers depends on the mobile phone.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"

Calling a number from the list

Select an entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

Deleting entries depends upon the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select contact if necessary.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", " Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Hands-free system

General information

Calls being conducted using the hands-free system can be continued using the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that have been initiated from outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued using the hands-free system if the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the call is automatically switched to hands-free mode.

If the switch does not occur automatically, then follow the instructions that appear on the display of the mobile phone, also refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

Calls being conducted using the hands-free system can also be continued using the mobile phone if so desired, depending on the mobile phone.

At this point, follow the instructions that appear on the display of the mobile phone, also refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

Operation by voice

With voice activation system: Operation, refer to page .

Without voice activation system: Depending upon the equipment, the mobile phone can be voice-operated as described below.

The list of short commands in the Owner's Manual does not apply to this type of voice operation.

The concept

▷ The mobile phone can be operated without removing your hand from the steering wheel.

▷ In many cases, the entry process is supported by means of announcements or questions.

▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice operation system.

Voice commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the ██ button on the steering wheel.

2. Say the command.

Finishing voice input

Press the ██ button on the steering wheel

or

◁€ ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.

◁€ ›Help‹.

Possible commands are read aloud.

Digits from zero to nine are recognized.

Each digit can be spoken individually or combined into a sequence to accelerate the entry process.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

◁€ ›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

Example: dialing phone numbers

1. Press the ██ button on the steering wheel.

2. ›Dial number‹

The system replies: ››Please say the number‹‹.

3. For example: ›123 456 7890‹

The system replies: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹.

4. ›Dial‹

The system replies: ››Dialing number‹‹.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

◁€ 1. ›Dial number‹.

2. Say the phone number.

3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

Digit sequences can be deleted after the system has repeated the digits.

◁€ ›Correct number‹.

The command can be repeated as often as necessary.

Deleting phone number

◁€ ›Delete‹.

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Redialing

◁€ ›Redial‹.

Voice phone book

Depending on how your vehicle is equipped, it may be necessary to create your own voice phone book.

The entries must be entered using voice commands and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. Up to 50 entries can be set up.

Storing the entry

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name aloud. Do not exceed a speaking duration of about 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being prompted to do so by the system.
4. ›Save‹.

Deleting the entry

1. ›Delete name‹.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm request: ›Yes‹

Deleting all entries

1. ›Delete phonebook‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm request: ›Yes‹
3. Confirm request again: ›Yes‹

Reading and selecting the entries

1. ›Read phonebook‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

Selecting an entry

1. ›Dial name‹.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm request: ›Yes‹

Adjusting volume

Turn knob during announcement.

▷ The volume remains the same, even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice operation system to initiate an emergency call. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 251, in the vicinity of the interior rearview mirror.

Ambient conditions

▷ Say the commands, numbers and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis and speed.

▷ Always say the commands in the language of the system. The language of the voice operation of the mobile phone is preset and cannot be changed via the Control Display.

▷ Keep the doors, windows, glass roof, and convertible top closed to prevent interference from outside noise.

▷ Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Snap-in adapter

General information

Detailed information on snap-in adapters that compatibly support mobile phone functions can be found at your BMW center.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charging function of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer be carried out.

When using the mobile phone via the vehicle, follow the operating instructions of the mobile phone.

Installation location

In the center armrest.

Inserting snap-in adapter

1. Press the button and remove the cover.

2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow **1**, and press downward, arrow **2**, until it clicks into place.

Inserting mobile phone

1. Depending on the mobile phone, it may be necessary to remove the protective cap of the antenna connector and from the USB connection of the mobile phone.
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.

Removing mobile phone

Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Office

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Overview

General information

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, text messages and mobile phone e-mails can be displayed using the Control Display if the mobile phone compatibly supports these functions and the required Bluetooth radio standards.

For information about which mobile phones and functions support the functions of Office, go to www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

A limited number of compatible mobile phones are available for Office.

Contents are only displayed completely when the vehicle is stopped.

Only read access to the mobile phone is possible.

⚠ Do not use Office while driving. Make entries only when traffic and road conditions permit; otherwise, you may endanger vehicle occupants and other road users by being distracted.◄

Requirements

▷ A suitable mobile phone is paired with the vehicle and connected. In some mobile phones, the data access to the mobile phone must be confirmed.

▷ Time zone, time, and date, refer to page 82, are correctly set on the Control Display and

on the mobile phone in order, for example, to correctly display appointments.

▷ Office is activated, refer to page 189.

Updating

Every time that the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle, data are updated. Appointments, tasks, notes and reminders can be updated separately.

1. "Office"
2. "Current office", "Calendar", "Tasks", "Notes" or "Reminders"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Update data"

   Data from the mobile phone are again transferred to the vehicle.

Current office

The number of unread messages and active tasks as well as upcoming appointments are displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Current office"
3. Selecting the desired entry to display details.

Contacts

General information

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

Displaying contacts

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
ⓐ	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
ⓑ	Mobile phone

Dialing phone numbers

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select phone number.

   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"

3. Change the entries.
4. "Store contact in vehicle"

If a contact is changed, the changes are not stored in the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed.

Selecting a contact as a destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select address.

   With contacts from the mobile phone, the address must be compared with the navigation data stored in the vehicle. In this case:

   Correct the address.

3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination

An address that is to be used in route guidance must correspond to the navigation data stored in the vehicle. The address can be checked to ensure this.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

If the address is corrected and stored, then a copy is established in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

New contact

A contact can be associated with up to 8 phone numbers, 2 addresses, 3 email addresses, and one Internet address.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Open "Options".
4. "New contact"

5. If input boxes are already filled with previous entries: "Delete input fields"
6. To fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.
7. Enter text and assign a contact type.
8. When equipped with a navigation system: enter address. It is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data stored in the vehicle. This ensures that route guidance is possible for all addresses.
9. "Accept address" if necessary
10. "Store contact in vehicle"

Contact types

Phone numbers and addresses can be assigned various contact types.

Symbol	Meaning
	Private phone number
	Business phone number
	Mobile phone number
	Other phone number
	Private address
	Business address

Defining a home address

It is possible to store a home address. It is listed at the beginning of the contacts.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting name sorting

Names can be displayed in different orders.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts are stored in your mobile phone, the sorting of names can differ from the sorting selected.

Displaying contact pictures

Pictures stored with contacts are stored in the vehicle when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. The mobile phone must support this function.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Configure Bluetooth®"
5. "Show images"

The display of all contact pictures is activated or deactivated.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Highlight the contact.
4. "Options"
5. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

Messages

General information

The displaying of text messages and emails from the mobile phone depends on whether the mobile phone supports transmission into the vehicle from the mobile phone. Text messages and e-mails may not be supported by the service provider or the function may have to be separately activated. After a mobile phone is paired for the first time, the transmission may take several minutes. Messages are only displayed completely when the vehicle is stopped. Messages from the auxiliary phone are not transmitted.

To display various messages:

▷ Text messages.
▷ Messages from My info.
▷ Messages from the BMW Concierge service.
▷ Messages from BMW Info.
▷ Emails from the mobile phone.

Displaying messages

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"

Message type

A symbol indicates the type of message.

Read message.

Unread message.

Symbol	Message type
✉	Text message
✉ⁱ	My Info
✉ⁱ	Message from the Concierge service, refer to page
✉ⁱ	Messages from BMW Info, refer to page
✉@	E-mail from mobile phone

Filtering message lists

A message list can be filtered if there is more than one message type.

1. "Filter:"

2. Select the message type.
   ▷ "All"
     All messages are displayed.
   ▷ "E-mail"
     Only text messages from mobile phones are displayed.
   ▷ "Services messages"
     Only messages from the BMW Concierge service, My Info, and BMW Info are displayed.
   ▷ "Text message"
     Only text messages from mobile phones are displayed.

Deleting messages

Messages from the Concierge service, My Info, BMW Info, and BMW Online can be deleted.

To delete a message:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.
4. Open "Options".
5. Open "Delete message".

To delete all messages:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all messages"

Text message

Calling a text message sender

1. Select the desired message.
2. Select the ✎ symbol.

Saving sender in the contacts

1. Highlight the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

Using contact data

Contact data from deadlines, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be stored or selected, see page 208.

Reading text messages aloud

Having text messages read aloud, refer to page 209.

My Info

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected.

Symbol	Function
⬤	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
✎	"Call"
	If the message contains a number, a telephone connection is established.
⬚	"Select phone number"
	If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. A telephone connection is established.

Messages from the Concierge service

Saving an address

1. ✉ Select the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected.

Symbol	Function
⬤	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Symbol	Function
✎	"Call"
	If the message contains a number, a telephone connection is established.
⬚	"Select phone number"
	If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. A telephone connection is established.
⬛	"Further information"
	Displaying additional information.

BMW Info

General information

Messages from BMW about technical campaigns and news from BMW.

Displaying messages

Select the desired message.

Selecting additional functions

The following functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
⬛	"Further information"
	Detailed information about a message is displayed. This does not incur any costs.
🧭	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
✎	"Call"
	If the message contains a number, a telephone connection is established.
⬚	"Select phone number"
	If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. A telephone connection is established.

E-mail

Displaying e-mail

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. ✉ Select the desired message.

Displaying e-mail contacts

If the sender and receiver of an e-mail were transmitted from a mobile phone, they will be displayed in the e-mail.

🔍 "Sender/Recipient"

If the e-mail address is stored in the contacts, then the contact is displayed. Select contact to display details.

If the e-mail address is not stored in the contacts, then it may be that only the e-mail address is displayed.

Using contact data

Contact data from deadlines, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be stored or selected, see page 208.

Deactivating entire display

When opening an e-mail when in the vehicle, it is completely transferred to the vehicle. This may result in charges.

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Fully download e-mails"

   Only a part of an e-mail from a mobile phone is loaded into the vehicle.

Reading e-mail

Reading e-mail, see page 209.

Calendar

Displaying calendar

Appointments from the last 20 days and the next 50 days can be displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Calendar"

   Appointments of the current day are displayed.

Selecting calendar day

1. Select date.

2. Select desired day or date.
   - ▷ "Next day"
   - ▷ "Date:"
   - ▷ "Previous day"
   - ▷ "Today"

Displaying appointment

1. Select the desired appointment.
2. To scroll through appointment, if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the controller.
   - ▷ Select the ◁□ □▷ symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from deadlines, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be stored or selected, see page 208.

Reading an appointment aloud

Reading an appointment aloud, refer to page 209.

Tasks

Displaying task list

Display open tasks that must be completed within the next 90 days.

1. "Office"
2. "Tasks"

Sorting task list

1. Select the top line in the task list.

2. To select a sorting criterion:
   ▷ "Priority (!)"
   ▷ "Subject"
   ▷ "Due date"

Displaying task

1. Select the desired task.
2. To scroll through the task, if necessary:
   ▷ Turn the controller.
   ▷ Select the ◁ ▷ symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from deadlines, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be stored or selected, see page 208.

Reading a task aloud

Reading a task aloud, refer to page 209.

Notes

Displaying notes

1. "Office"
2. "Notes"

   All notes are displayed.

Displaying a note

1. Select the desired note.

2. To scroll through the note, if necessary:
   ▷ Turn the controller.
   ▷ Select the ◁ ▷ symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from deadlines, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be stored or selected, see page 208.

Reading a note aloud

Reading a note aloud, refer to page 209.

Reminders

Displaying reminders

Reminders for imminent appointments and tasks are displayed. After an appointment has passed or a task is due, the reminder is no longer displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Reminders"
3. Select the desired reminder.

The associated appointment or task is displayed.

Using contact data

Overview

Contact data from deadlines, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be stored or selected.

To display a contact or dial a phone number:

1. 🔍 "Use contact data"

2. To display a contact or dial a phone number:
   ▷ Select a contact to display a detailed view of the contact.
   ▷ Select a phone number to directly establish a connection.

Storing contact data

1. 🔍 "Use contact data"
2. Highlight a phone number or e-mail address.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Add to existing contact" or "Store as new contact"

Reading aloud

Text messages, emails, appointments, tasks, and notes can be read aloud.

1. Select the desired message, appointment, task, or note.
2. Select the ▷ symbol.

While the message is being read aloud, you have the following options:

▷ ❚❚"Pause"

   Interrupt the reading. Select again to resume the reading.

▷ ◁| "Back to beginning"

   Read message again from the beginning.

▷ Select the ◁ symbol.

   Skip back one paragraph.

▷ Select the ▷| symbol.

   Skip over a paragraph.

▷ To terminate the reading, move the controller toward the left.

What to do if…

For information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page .

▷ Appointments, tasks, notes, texts, or emails from the mobile phone are not displayed?

   The mobile phone is not suitable for the missing function or is not correctly connected.

   The mobile phone has not been assigned the Office function.

   The mobile phone is connected as an auxiliary phone.

   The appointments are older than 20 days and are more than 50 days in the future.

   The tasks have been marked as completed or are more than 90 days in the future.

   Depending on the number of appointments, tasks, notes, and messages stored in the mobile phone, not all of them are displayed in the vehicle.

▷ Appointments or tasks from the mobile phone are not being displayed at the correct time?

   The time zone, time, or date is incorrectly set in the Control Display and in the mobile phone.

▷ Texts of entries are not displayed completely?

   Texts are already shortened by the mobile phone.

   Synchronization between the mobile phone and vehicle can take a few minutes.

▷ Contact pictures are not being displayed?

   Up to max. 200 contact pictures can be stored in the vehicle.

▷ If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function please contact Customer Relations or a BMW center.

Contacts

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Note

In equipment packages without mobile phone preparation.

General information

Contacts can be created and edited. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. If input boxes are already filled with previous entries: "Delete input fields"

4. To fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.

5. Entering text, refer to page 24.

   When equipped with a navigation system: enter address. It is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data stored in the vehicle. This ensures that route guidance is possible for all addresses.
6. "Store" if necessary
7. "Store contact in vehicle"

Defining a home address

It is possible to store a home address. It is listed at the beginning of the contacts.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

My contacts

General information

List of all contacts that are stored in the vehicle.

Displaying contacts

1. "Contacts"
2. "My contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
Ⓐ	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
Ⓑ	Mobile phone

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"

3. Change the entries.
4. Move the controller to the left.
5. "Yes"

Selecting a contact as a destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select address.
3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination

An address that is to be used in route guidance must correspond to the navigation data stored in the vehicle. The address can be checked to ensure this.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

Selecting name sorting

Names can be displayed in different orders.

1. "My contacts"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Exporting/importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported using Personal Profile, refer to page 32.

Deleting contacts

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

ConnectedDrive

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. Equipment is also described that is not available because of, for example, selected options or country version. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

BMW Assist

General information

BMW Assist provides a number of different services. For example, the position data of the vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center when an Emergency Request is sent.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the contract individually agreed upon.

After the contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Requirements

▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged into a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.

▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine its current position.

▷ To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.

▷ The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. The service must have been fully enabled.

▷ BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

▷ Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.

▷ Automatic Emergency Request: under certain conditions, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.

▷ Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this call.

▷ Customer Relations: connection to Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

▷ BMW TeleService: the data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a service appointment.

▷ Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.

▷ Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report to the police that your vehicle was stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.

▷ In addition, the optional Convenience Plan offers Concierge service and information on route planning, the traffic situation and

weather. Using Critical Calling, a limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center, for example if the mobile phone is not available or discharged. Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService:

General information

TeleService supports communication with your BMW center.

▷ Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the BMW center. In this way, the BMW center can plan its work in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.

▷ In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.

▷ The service varies by country.

▷ Connection may incur charges.

▷ Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

▷ BMW Assist is activated.

▷ Wireless reception is available.

▷ Ignition switched on.

Using TeleService

Generally, TeleService is activated in the vehicle.

If TeleService is not activated, it is possible to establish a voice contact to the BMW Group Mobile Service.

For additional uses or to deactivate the services, consult your BMW center or contact Customer Relations.

Concierge service

General information

The Concierge service of BMW Assist will inform you, for example, about upcoming events, filling station, or hotels and supplies you with their phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist Concierge service. Use of the Concierge service requires an additional activation by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"

2. "Concierge"

3. "Start service"

A voice contact with the BMW Concierge service is established. Phone numbers and addresses can be transmitted as a message.

Messages

Information about messages, refer to page 204.

Roadside Assistance

At a glance

BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

Contact with BMW Roadside Assistance can also be established using a Check Control message, refer to page 84.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance without BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"

2. "Roadside Assistance"

   The Roadside Assistance number is displayed. If a mobile phone is paired, a connection to BMW Roadside Assistance is established.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance with BMW Assist or TeleService

In a vehicle with TeleService, assistance is first offered through the TeleService Diagnosis and then if necessary, through the TeleService Help.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"

2. "Roadside Assistance"

3. "Start service"

BMW TeleService Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are critical to vehicle diagnosis. These data are automatically transmitted.

After transmission of the data, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

BMW Online

Overview

You can use BMW Online to search the yellow pages.

License conditions:

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd., in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

▷ Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.

▷ The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.

▷ The date setting on the Control Display is current.

Starting BMW Online

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"

2. "BMW Online"

3. "OK" if necessary

The BMW Online start page is displayed.

Using BMW Online

To select and display content:

▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.

▷ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Display start page"

Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

Canceling

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

Overview

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If a mobile phone is paired, a connection is established to Customer Relations.

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

Service Request

Overview

Inform your BMW center that you need to schedule a service appointment. The Teleservice data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your BMW center will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"

Automatic Service Request

The Teleservice data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your BMW center prior to the service deadline. If possible, the center will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

Check when your BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Service status

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Status"
3. "Available services"

Updating BMW Assist

Manually updating BMW TeleService, BMW Assist, and BMW Online.

"Update BMW Assist"

Data transfer

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. Open "Options".

3. "Data transfer"

Apps

Overview

Certain software applications of a suitable mobile phone can be integrated into the vehicle. These software applications are displayed on the Control Display. They can be operated via iDrive.

Requirements

▷ The mobile phone's operating system supports the use of apps.

▷ Software applications are installed on the mobile phone and are operational.

▷ Suitable mobile phone.

▷ Appropriate mobile phone contract.

   Additional costs possibly incurred are not included in the price of apps.

Information about suitable mobile phones, available software applications, and their installation can be found at www.bmw.com/connectivity or at your BMW center.

⚠ Only make entries when traffic conditions permit. Otherwise, you may endanger vehicle occupants and other road users by being distracted.
For safety reasons, some software applications can only be used when the vehicle is stopped.◀

⚠ To avoid malfunctions, only use software applications approved by BMW.◀

Using apps

1. Connect the mobile phone using the snap-in adapter or the USB audio interface.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. Select the desired software application.

Displaying status

You can display information about the currently available software applications.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW apps"

Plugin

Selected functions of the mobile phone are displayed on the Control Display. They can be operated via iDrive.

1. Connect the mobile phone using the snap-in adapter.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. "PlugIn"
4. "Activate PlugIn"
5. Use the controller to navigate in the displayed functions and select the desired category or track, for example.

BACK   Press the button to move one level up or back within the functions of the mobile phone.

MENU   Press the button twice to return back to the main menu.

Notes

▷ The range of apps that are displayed in the Control Display depends on the range of software applications installed on the mobile phone.

▷ The data transfer of the software applications from the mobile phone to the vehicle may take some time. Some software applications are dependent on the speed of the available Internet connection of the mobile phone.

▷ Certain versions of the mobile phone used and the software they use may not permit apps to be used at the same time as the Bluetooth hands-free system.
If necessary, restart the software application on the mobile phone after completing a call.

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and Roadside Assistance.

Refueling

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

⚠️ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

⚠️ Always switch off the engine before refueling; otherwise, fuel cannot be added to the tank and a message will be displayed.◀

⚠️ Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel. Do not carry any spare fuel containers in your vehicle. They can develop a leak and cause an explosion or cause a fire in the event of an accident.◀

Fuel filler flap

Opening

1. Open the fuel filler flap. To do so, lightly press the rear edge.
2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

⚠️ Do not pinch the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. A message will be displayed if the fuel cap is loose or missing.◀

Manually releasing the fuel filler flap

In the event of a malfunction, you can release the fuel filler flap manually:

1. Remove the cover from the right-hand side-wall of the trunk.

2. Pull the button with the fuel pump symbol down.
   The fuel filler flap is released.

Observe the following when refueling

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle while filling the tank, as that would lead to

▷ Premature pump shutoff

▷ Reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

⚠ Do not overfill the fuel tank; otherwise, fuel spills can cause damage to the environment and the vehicle.◀

⚠ When handling fuels, follow the safety instructions provided at filling stations; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.◀

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 14 US gal/53 liters, including the reserve capacity of 2.1 US gal/8 liters.

Fuel specifications

Gasoline

For optimum fuel consumption, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or as low in sulfur as possible.

Never use fuels labeled at the fuel pump as metal-containing.

⚠ Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with metallic additives such as manganese or iron; doing so can cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components.◀

Use fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i.e. E10.

The ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806-xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511-xx

xx: Comply with the currently valid standard.

⚠ Do not fill the tank with E85, i.e. fuel containing 85 % ethanol, nor with FlexFuel. Otherwise, the engine and fuel supply system will be damaged.◀

The engine has a knock control function. It is therefore possible to use different fuel grades.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

⚠ Do not use gasoline below the indicated minimum fuel grade; otherwise, proper engine function is not ensured.◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

⚠ The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability,

starting and stalling may occur, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, we highly recommend purchasing gasoline from BP or Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

BMW recommends BP fuels 🔧

Wheels and tires

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Tire inflation pressures

Information for your safety

It is not merely the tires' service life, but also driving comfort and, to a great extent, driving safety that depend on the condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure.

⚠️ Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it, if necessary: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. If you fail to observe this precaution you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that can not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. Do not drive with deflated, i.e. flat tires, except when using run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to loss of control over the vehicle.◀

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

▷ After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to

Inflation pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

▷ The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes approved and tire brands recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressures, observe the following:

▷ Tire sizes for your vehicle

▷ Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h and to achieve optimum driving comfort, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds up to a maximum of 100 mph or 160 km/h.

These tire inflation pressures can also be found on the driver's side door pillar when the driver's door is open.

⚠️ The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph or 160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed; otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph or 160 km/h

⚠ In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph or 160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the col-umns for traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph or 160 km/h. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◄

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits; otherwise, violations of the laws could occur.

Coupe: tire inflation pressures for the 128i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/psi			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in bar/psi with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
195/55 R 16 87 H M+S	2.2/32	2.6/38	2.4/35	2.9/42
205/55 R 17 89 H M+S 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	2.2/32	2.4/35	2.4/35	2.9/42
Front: 205/50 R 17 89 V	2.2/32	-	2.5/36	-
Rear: 225/45 R 17 91 V	-	2.4/35	-	3.0/44
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	2.2/32	-	2.4/35	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	2.7/39	-	2.9/42
Compact spare wheel: T 125/80 R 17 99 M	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 50 mph/80 km/h 4.2/60			

Coupe: tire inflation pressures for the 135i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/psi			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in bar/psi with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S 205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	2.3/33	2.5/36	2.6/38	2.9/42
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	2.5/36	-	2.6/38	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	2.7/39	-	2.9/42
Compact spare wheel: T 125/80 R 17 99 M	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 50 mph/80 km/h 4.2/60			

Convertible: tire inflation pressures for the 128i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/psi			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in bar/psi with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
without Sport Package				
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S	2.2/32	2.4/35	2.2/32	2.7/39
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S 205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	2.2/32	2.6/38	2.4/35	2.9/42
Front: 205/50 R 17 89 V	2.2/32	-	2.4/35	-
Rear: 225/45 R 17 91 V	-	2.5/36	-	2.8/41
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	2.4/35	-	2.4/35	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	2.8/41	-	2.8/41
Compact spare wheel: T 125/80 R 17 99 M	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 50 mph/80 km/h 4.2/60			
with Sport Package				
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S	2.2/32	2.4/35	2.2/32	2.7/39
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	2.2/32	2.6/38	2.4/35	2.9/42
Front: 205/50 R 17 89 V	2.2/32	-	2.7/39	-
Rear: 225/45 R 17 91 V	-	2.5/36	-	3.2/46
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	2.4/35	-	2.6/38	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	2.8/41	-	3.1/45
Compact spare wheel: T 125/80 R 17 99 M	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 50 mph/80 km/h 4.2/60			

Convertible: tire inflation pressures for the 135i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/psi			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in bar/psi with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
without Sport Package				
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S 205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	2.2/32	2.6/38	2.5/36	2.9/42
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	2.7/39	-	2.7/39	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	2.8/41	-	2.8/41
Compact spare wheel: T 125/80 R 17 99 M	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 50 mph/80 km/h 4.2/60			
with Sport Package				
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	2.2/32	2.6/38	2.5/36	2.9/42
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	2.7/39	-	2.7/39	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	2.8/41	-	3.1/45
Compact spare wheel: T 125/80 R 17 99 M	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 50 mph/80 km/h 4.2/60			

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g.   225/45 R 17 91 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio
in %
Radial belt construction
Rim diameter in inches
Load rating,
not on ZR tires
Speed code letter, in
front of the R on ZR tires

Speed code letter

Q = up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph or 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph or 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph or 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph or 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph or 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g.   DOT xxxx xxx 1012

Manufacturer's
code for tire make
Tire size and
tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT … 1012 means that the tire was manufactured in week 10 of 2012.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

⚠ All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠ The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cor-

nering, hydroplaning, or peak traction charac-
teristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B,
and C, representing the tire's resistance to the
generation of heat and its ability to dissipate
heat when tested under controlled conditions
on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.
Sustained high temperature can cause the
material of the tire to degenerate and reduce
tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to
sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to
a level of performance which all passenger car
tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehi-
cle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A
represent higher levels of performance on the
laboratory test wheel than the minimum
required by law.

⚠️ The temperature grade for this tire is
established for a tire that is properly
inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed,
underinflation, or excessive loading, either sep-
arately or in combination, can cause heat
buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular
symbol containing the letters RSC on the side
of the tire, refer to page 230.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than sum-
mer tires.

XL

Designation for specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear,
signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged
in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/
3 mm, although, for example, European legisla-
tion only specifies a minimum tread depth of
0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/
3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed
hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of
water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth
of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less
suitable for winter conditions. In the interest of
safety, new tires should be installed.

Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove
are distributed around the tire's circumference;
the letters TWI, for Tread Wear Indicator, on the
tire's sidewalls identify tires that incorporate
these wear indicators. Once the tire tread has
worn down to the wear indicators, the tire has
worn to a depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

Wheel/tire damage

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces,
as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can
cause serious damage to wheels, tires, and sus-
pension parts. This is more likely to occur with
low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning
between the wheel and the road. Be careful to
avoid road hazards and reduce your speed,
especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-
profile tires.

Unusual vibrations encountered during normal
vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or
some other vehicle defect. This can, for exam-
ple, be caused by driving over curbs. The same
applies to any other abnormal road behavior,
such as pulling severely to the right or left.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire dealer. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there.
Otherwise, tire damage can pose a lethal hazard to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires mounted only by your BMW center or by a tire dealer. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW recommends that you do not use retreaded tires, since driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include potentially different tire casing structures and often wide variations in tire age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

Correct wheels and tires

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount run-flat tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions, which could lead to body contact and thus to severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot guarantee their driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

The correct combination of wheels and tires is also necessary to ensure reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS, DSC or FTM.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single brand and tread configuration. After a tire has been damaged, mount the previous wheel and tire combination again as soon as possible.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitor TPM electronics

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires, or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics; otherwise, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not be able to detect a puncture, refer to page 95. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

Recommended tire brands

Certain makes of tire are recommended by BMW for each tire size. They are marked with a clearly visible BMW designation on the sidewall of the tire.
When properly used, these tires meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for driving on winter roads or at temperatures below +45 ºF / +7 ºC. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

⚠️ Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tires mounted on your car; failure to do so could result in tire damage and accidents.◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tires, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the mounted tires must be displayed in your field of view. Specialist tire dealers and your BMW center can supply these labels.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire.

Swapping wheels between axles

BMW advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles, even if all tires have the same size, as this could impair driving characteristics. If the tires are of mixed sizes, swapping wheels between the axles is not permissible.

Run-flat tires

The symbol identifying run-flat tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall.
Run-flat tires comprise a conditionally self-supporting tire and a special rim. The reinforcement in the sidewalls ensures that the tire can

continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurized.

For information on continuing to drive with a flat tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire on page 93.

Snow chains

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. Consult your BMW center for more information. Snow chains must be mounted in pairs and on the rear wheels only. Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with chains.

▷ Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor if snow chains are mounted; otherwise, the instrument might issue an incorrect reading. When driving with snow chains, you may find it helpful to activate DTC temporarily, refer to page 90.◀

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Important parts of the engine compartment

1 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 235

2 Washer fluid filler neck for headlamp cleaning system and window washer system, refer to page 72

3 Jump-starting connection, refer to page 252

4 Fluid filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil, page 235

Hood

⚠ Do not work on the car unless you possess the necessary technical knowledge. If you are not familiar with the regulations to be followed, have the necessary work on the vehicle carried out only by your BMW center; if this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Releasing

Pull the lever.

Opening

⚠️ To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the engine compartment. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

Press the release handle and open the hood.

Closing

Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

⚠️ Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

If you see any signs while driving your vehicle that the hood is not completely closed, stop at once and close it securely.◀

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and operating conditions; for example, the engine oil consumption is significantly higher with a very sporty driving style. For this reason, regularly check the oil level after each time you refuel.

Checking oil level

Your car is equipped with an electronic oil-level monitor.

For precise measurement and display of the oil level, the engine must be at operating temperature, i.e. following at least 6.2 miles/10 km of uninterrupted driving. You can have the oil level displayed while you are driving, or while the vehicle is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running.

Display in the instrument cluster

1. Push button **1** in the turn signal/high beam lever up or down repeatedly until the appro-

priate symbol is shown in the display, accompanied by the word "OIL".

2. Press button **2**.
The oil level is checked and the reading displayed.

Possible displays

1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being checked.
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface, or about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.

3 Oil level down to minimum:
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil on page 235.

4 Oil level is too high.

⚠ Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◄

5 The oil level sensor is defective.
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer

to page 237. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display via iDrive

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level OK"

▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."

▷ "Measuring engine oil level...":
This can take about 1 minute if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is moving.
If engine oil was added, it may take up to 30 minutes to obtain an oil level reading.

▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil below.
If the oil level is below the minimum value, add engine oil immediately to avoid engine damage.

▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked.":

⚠️ Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, the excess oil may lead to engine damage.◀

▷ "Measurement inactive. Have this checked.":
Do not add engine oil. Before continuing to drive, note the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to Service requirements on page 80. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil

Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

⚠️ Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km; otherwise, the engine could be damaged.◀

⚠️ If the engine oil is too high, have the vehicle checked immediately; failure to do so may result in engine damage.◀

⚠️ Keep oils, greases, etc. out of the reach of children and comply with the relevant warnings on the containers. Otherwise, health hazards may result.◀

Oil grades to add

⚠️ Do not use oil additives as this could result in engine damage.◀

⚠️ When selecting an engine oil, make sure to use one from the SAE viscosity classes 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 or 5W-30; failure to do

so may result in malfunctions or engine damage.◀

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Some oil grades may not be available in all countries.

Approved oil grades

Gasoline engine
BMW High Performance SAE 5W-30
BMW Longlife-01
BMW Longlife-01 FE

Additional information about approved oil grades is available at your BMW center.

Alternative oil types

If approved oils are not available, you can add quantities of up to 1 US quart/1 liter of an oil with one of the following specifications:

Gasoline engine
API SM or higher

Oil change

Oil changes should only be performed by a BMW center.

BMW recommends ⊜*Castrol*

Coolant

Coolant consists of half water and half additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center about suitable additives.

⚠️ Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may result. Because additives are harmful to your health, it is important to follow the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environ-
mental protection regulations when dis-
posing of coolant additives.◀

Coolant temperature

If the coolant and therefore the engine over-
heats, a warning lamp lights up. A message
appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level

Do not add coolant to the cooling system
when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant
can cause burns.◀

1. Do not open the engine hood before the
   engine has cooled down.

2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank a little
   counterclockwise to allow any accumulated
   pressure to escape, then continue turning
   to open.

3. The coolant level is correct if it is between
   the maximum and minimum marks in the
   filler neck, refer also to the diagram next to
   the filler neck.

4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to
   the specified level; do not overfill.

5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.

6. Have the reason for the coolant loss elimi-
   nated as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The BMW Maintenance System advises you of necessary maintenance measures and helps you maintain the traffic and operating safety of the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

On the Control Display, you can have the remaining times or distances for selected maintenance tasks and any legally prescribed dates displayed, refer to page 80:

▷ Engine oil

▷ Brake pads: separately for front and rear
▷ Brake fluid
▷ Vehicle check
▷ Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in the remote control

Your vehicle continuously stores service-requirement information in the remote control while you are driving. Your dealership Service Advisor can read out this data from the remote control unit, and propose an optimized maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore give your dealership Service Advisor the remote control unit that you last used.

Make sure that the date is always set correctly, refer to page 84; otherwise, the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis OBD

Coupe:

Convertible:

On the driver's side is an OBD socket for checking components relevant to the composition of the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

SERVICE ENGINE SOON The warning lamp lights up:
The vehicle is producing higher emissions. The trip can be continued. Have the car checked as soon as possible.

Canadian models display this warning lamp.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This indicates excessive misfiring in the engine. If this happens, you should reduce your speed and visit your nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Severe engine misfiring can quickly lead to serious damage of emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

CLOSE GAS CAP The warning lamp lights up if the fuel cap is not properly tightened and the OBD system assumes that fuel vapor is escaping. Make sure that the fuel cap is correctly positioned and close it until it audibly clicks.

Care

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Care products

Regular cleaning and care contributes significantly to the value retention of your BMW.

BMW recommends cleaning and caring for your vehicle with products that are approved by BMW for this purpose.

Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on the products and services available for cleaning and caring for your BMW.

▷ Original BMW CareProducts have been material-tested, laboratory-checked and proven in the field, and offer optimal care and protection for your vehicle.◀

⚠ Do not use cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents as these may result in damage.◀

⚠ Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous or hazardous to your health. Therefore, follow the warning and safety instructions on the packaging. When cleaning inside the vehicle, always open the doors or windows of the vehicle. In enclosed areas, provide for sufficient ventilation. Only use products designed for cleaning vehicles.◀

Exterior care

Washing the vehicle

⚠ Especially during the winter months, ensure that the vehicle is washed more frequently. Heavy soiling and road salt can lead to vehicle damage.◀

⚠ After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, water can reduce braking efficiency over the short term and brake discs can corrode.◀

Automatic car washes

Give preference to car washes that use cloth or soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.

▷ Do not use high-pressure car washes; otherwise, water may drip into the vehicle around the windows.◀

Before driving into a car wash, ensure that it is suitable for your BMW. Check the following:

▷ Dimensions of your vehicle, refer to page 259.

▷ If necessary, fold in the outside rearview mirrors, refer to page 56.

▷ Maximum permissible tire width.

⚠ Avoid car washes with guide rail heights over 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, there is the danger of damaging chassis parts.◀

▷ In Convertibles, do not treat the convertible top with wax. Ensure that a program is available that does not apply wax or is designed specifically for Convertibles.

Preparations before driving into an automatic car wash:

▷ Unscrew the rod antenna.

▷ Deactivate the rain sensor to prevent undesired wiper operation.

▷ Remove additional attachments, e.g. spoilers or telephone antennas, if there is a possibility that they could be damaged.

▷ Leave the remote control in the ignition lock.

Automatic transmission

Before driving into an automatic car wash, perform the following steps to ensure that the vehicle can roll:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Move the selector lever to position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Sport automatic transmission with double clutch

Before driving into an automatic car wash, perform the following steps to ensure that the vehicle can roll:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Engage transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

The transmission is switched into position P:

▷ Automatically after approx. 30 minutes

▷ If you remove the infrared remote control from the ignition lock

Steam jets/high-pressure washers

When using steam cleaners or high-pressure cleaning jets, make sure to maintain a sufficient distance and stay below a maximum temperature of 140 ℉/60 ℃.
Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure or temperature can lead to component damage or water penetration. Follow the operating instructions for the steam jet or high-pressure washer.◀

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors, e.g. of the Park Distance Control, for an extended period and maintain a distance of at least 1 ft/30 cm from them.◀

Manual car wash

When washing the vehicle by hand, use large quantities of water and car shampoo if necessary. Clean the vehicle with a sponge or washing brush, applying light pressure only.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or switch off the ignition to prevent unintentional activation of the wipers.◀

Observe local regulations pertaining to washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not rub them dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Loosen dirt, e.g. insects, with shampoo or insect remover and wash away with copious quantities of water.

Thaw ice with a windshield deicer and do not use an ice scraper.

Windows

Clean the inside and outside surfaces of the windows and the mirrors with window cleaner.

Do not clean the mirrors with cleaners containing quartz.◀

Convertible top care

The appearance and service life of the convertible top largely depends on its proper care and operation.

Please follow these instructions:

▷ Never attempt to fold and stow the convertible top in the convertible compartment

when the top is wet or frozen. Otherwise, water stains, mildew, and chafe marks may occur.

▷ If water spots occur on the inside headliner despite precautions, remove them using a microfiber cloth and interior cleaner.

▷ If the vehicle is parked in an enclosed area for a longer period of time, make sure that there is sufficient ventilation.

▷ Remove any bird droppings immediately, since they have corrosive properties which will corrode the convertible top and damage the rubber seals.

⚠ To remove stains from the convertible top, do not use stain removers, paint thinners, solvents, benzine or similar substances. These cleaners may damage the rubber seals. The improper care or cleaning methods may cause the convertible top and its seams to leak.◀

To remove heavy soiling, use a special convertible top cleaner.
Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

After washing the convertible top three to five times, treat it with an impregnating agent.

Paintwork care

Regular care contributes to value retention and protects the paintwork against the long-term effects of damaging substances.

Environmental influences in regions with elevated levels of air pollution or natural contaminants such as tree sap or pollen can impact vehicle paintwork. Therefore, it is important to adapt the frequency and scope of car care accordingly.

Immediately remove particularly corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, or bird droppings to prevent damage to the paintwork.

Repairing paintwork damage

▷ Immediately repair scratches or similar damage, such as that caused by stones hitting the vehicle, where necessary to prevent rusting.◀

BMW recommends having paintwork damage repaired by a professional paint repair workshop according to BMW specifications using original BMW paint materials.

Preservation

A preservation treatment is necessary when water no longer beads off the clean paintwork surface. Only use products for paintwork preservation that contain carnauba or synthetic waxes.

Rubber seals

Treat only with water or rubber care products.

⚠ Do not use silicon-containing care products on rubber seals; otherwise, noise and damage could occur.◀

Chrome parts

Carefully clean vehicle parts such as the radiator grill, door handles or window frames with copious quantities of water and a shampoo additive, especially when roads are treated with deicing salt. For additional treatment, use a chrome polish.

Light-alloy wheels

For technical reasons, dust is generated during braking that is deposited on the light-alloy wheels. Remove the dust regularly using acid-free rim cleaner.

⚠ Do not use aggressive, acid-containing, strongly alkaline, or coarse cleansers and do not use steam cleaners at temperatures greater than 140 ℉ /60 ℃; otherwise you may damage your vehicle.◀

Outside sensors/cameras

▷ Keep the sensors and cameras on the outside of the vehicle, e.g. those for Park Distance Control, clean and free of ice to ensure that they remain fully functional.◀

Interior care

Upholstery fabrics/cloth trims/ Alcantara fabrics

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner to remove superficial dirt.

To remove severe spots such as stains from beverages, use a soft sponge or lint-free microfiber cloth and suitable interior cleaners. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

▷ Clean the upholstery down to the seams using a sweeping motion. Avoid strong rubbing.◀

⚠ Opened Velcro fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather/leather trim

▷ The leather used by BMW is a high quality natural product. Slight irregularities in the leather are a typical characteristic of natural leather.◀

Dust and road grit in the pores and folds of the leather have an abrasive effect, leading to increased wear and causing the leather surface to become brittle prematurely. Therefore, frequently clean the leather of dust using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently as dust and dirt are more noticeable.

Treat the leather at least once every two months using a leather lotion as dirt and grease will gradually attack the leather's protective layer.

Carpet and floor mats

⚠ Keep floor mats, carpet, and other objects out of the movement range of the pedals; otherwise, they may inhibit the function of the pedals during driving.

Do not place additional floor mats onto an existing one or onto other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be appropriately fastened. Make sure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they have been removed, e.g. for cleaning.◀

Interior plastic parts

▷ Imitation leather surfaces

▷ Lamp glasses

▷ Display pane of instrument cluster

▷ Matte parts

Clean with water and solvent-free plastic cleaner if necessary.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trim and fine wood parts with a damp cloth. Wipe dry with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

⚠ Do not clean chemically, as this may destroy the webbing.◀

Interior sensors/cameras

To clean interior sensors and cameras, e.g. of the High-beam Assistant, use a lint-free cloth moistened with glass cleaner.

Displays

Use an antistatic microfiber cloth to clean displays, e.g. of the radio or instrument cluster.

⚠ Avoid applying excessive pressure when cleaning the displays; otherwise, damage may occur.◀

⚠️ Do not use chemical or abrasive house-hold cleaning agents. Keep all types of fluid away from the device. Otherwise, surfaces or electrical components may be corroded or damaged.◀

CD/DVD drives

⚠️ Do not use a cleaning CD, as it may damage parts of the drive.◀

Vehicle storage

If you plan to park your vehicle for longer than three months, your BMW center will be happy to advise you.

Replacing components

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Onboard vehicle tool kit

The onboard vehicle tool kit is stored below the floor mat in the trunk.

Wiper blades

1. Fold out the wiper arm and hold it.
2. Press together the locking spring, arrows **1**, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow **2**.
3. Take the wiper blade out of the catch mechanism, pulling the blade toward the front.

⚠️ To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the hood.◀

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

▷ Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Replacement bulb sets are available at your BMW center.

⚠️ Only change bulbs while they are cool to the touch; otherwise, you could suffer burns.◀

⚠️ When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question; otherwise, short-circuits could result. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

▷ To replace lamps not described here, please contact your BMW center.◀

Light-emitting diodes LED

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light sources for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

⚠️ Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours; otherwise, this could cause irritation of the retina.◀

Headlight lenses

In cool or humid weather, condensation may form on the interior of outside lamps. The con-

densation will disappear after a short time when driving with the headlamps switched on. The headlamp glasses do not need to be changed.

If the headlamps do not defrost despite driving with the headlamps switched on, and additional moisture builds up, for example water droplets in the lamps, have them checked by your BMW center.

Xenon lamps

These bulbs have a very long service life and are highly unlikely to fail. If a xenon lamp fails nevertheless, switch on the fog lamps and continue the journey with great care, provided that local legislation does not prohibit this.

⚠ Have all work on the xenon lamp system performed only by your BMW center. Due to high voltage, there is a risk of fatal injury if work on the xenon lamps is carried out improperly.◀

Removing the headlamp cover

1. Pull the wire brackets over the notches, see arrows, and fold to the side.

2. Fold away the headlamp cover.

⚠ Be careful when attaching the headlamp cover and ensure that both wire brackets are securely in place; otherwise, leaks could occur and cause damage to the headlamp system.◀

Attach the headlamp cover in reverse order.

Halogen headlamps

Halogen low beams and high beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

⚠ Always wear gloves and eye protection; the atmosphere within the H7 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury if the bulb is damaged.◀

The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

1 High beams

2 Low-beam headlamps

1. Remove the headlamp cover.

2. Disconnect the plug from the lamp.

3. Push the wire bracket to the side out of the mounting, arrow **1**, and fold it down, arrow **2**.

4. Remove the bulb.

5. Insert a new bulb with the notch at the top.

6. Fold up the wire bracket and engage it.

7. Connect the plug.

8. Attach the headlamp cover.

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps

W5W bulb, 5 watts

1. Remove the headlamp cover.

The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

2. Pull out the bulb holder.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.
4. Reinsert the bulb holder.
5. Attach the headlamp cover.

Xenon headlamps

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps, daytime running lights

H8 bulb, 35 watts

The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

1. Remove the headlamp cover.
2. Turn the bulb, see arrow, and remove it.
3. Pull off the connector and replace the bulb.
4. Attach the connector, insert the bulb and turn it all the way in the opposite direction.
5. Attach the headlamp cover.

Corner-illuminating lamps

H3 bulb, 55 watts

The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

1. Remove the top headlamp cover, using the screwdriver to push the detent lugs to one side.

2. Turn the bulb holder, see arrow, and remove it.

3. Slide the bulb out of the holder and pull off the connector.
4. Replace the bulb and attach the connector.
5. Insert the bulb holder and turn it all the way in the opposite direction.
6. Attach the headlamp cover.

Turn signals, front

PY21W bulb, 21 watts

The turn signal bulb can be changed via a cover in the wheel arch.

1. Turn the respective wheel inwards.

2. Using a coin, turn both locks of the cover all the way to the left, arrows **1**, and remove the cover.

3. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove it, arrow **2**.

4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

5. Insert the bulb holder and lock it by turning it to the right.

6. Attach the cover by positioning the bottom edge first and then turning both locks all the way to the right.

Side turn signals

W5W bulb, 5 watts

1. Press the rear edge of the lamp toward the front with your fingertip, arrow **1** and pivot it out, arrow **2**.

2. While simultaneously lifting the retaining tab, rotate bulb holder to the left and remove.

3. Remove lamp and replace it.

To install, insert front end of the lamp and press into place at the back.

Tail lamps with halogen headlamps

▷ Turn signal:
PY21W bulb, 21 watts

▷ Backup lamp:
W16W bulb, 16 watts

▷ Brake lamps:
P21W bulb, 21 watts

▷ Brake Force Display lamp:
H21W bulb, 21 watts

1 Inner brake lamp/tail lamp

2 Outer brake lamp/parking/tail lamp

3 Reflector

4 Lateral reflector

5 Turn signal

6 Backup lamp

7 Brake Force Display lamp/tail lamp

Tail lamps with xenon headlamps

▷ Turn signal:
PY21W bulb, 21 watts

▷ Backup lamp:
W16W bulb, 16 watts

▷ Brake lamps:
P21W bulb, 21 watts

▷ Brake Force Display lamp:
H21W bulb, 21 watts

1 Roadside parking lamp and tail lamp LED

2 Inner brake lamp

3 Outer brake lamp

4 Reflector

5 Lateral reflector

6 Turn signal

7 Backup lamp

8 Brake Force Display lamp

Replacing tail lamps

Outer brake lamp

The outer brake lamp can be accessed through a single socket.

The figure shows the right side of the vehicle.

1. Remove the cover from the panel of the trunk.

2. Turn the bulb holder to the left, see arrow, and remove it.

3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

4. Attach the bulb holder and turn it all the way in the opposite direction.

5. Reattach the cover.

⚠ With Xenon headlamps, the parking/tail lamp uses LED technology. After replacing the bulb, ensure that the bulb holder is properly seated; otherwise, the roadside parking lamp/tail lamp may not work.◀

Inner brake lamp, turn signal, backup lamp and Brake Force Display lamp

The bulbs are integrated in a single bulb holder.

1. Remove the cover from the panel of the trunk.

2. Detach the bulb holder by pressing together the clips, see arrows, and remove it.

3. Brake lamps and turn signal: apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

4. Backup lamp: pull the bulb out of the socket and replace it.

5. Attach the bulb holder and let it snap into place.

6. Reattach the cover.

License plate lamps, center brake lamp, and parking/tail lamp

These lamps use LED technology for operation. If they malfunction, please contact your BMW center.

Changing wheels

Your BMW is equipped with run-flat tires as standard. This eliminates the need to change a wheel immediately in the event of a puncture.

For information on continuing to drive with a damaged tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire on page 93.

The symbol identifying run-flat tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall, refer to New wheels and tires, page 230.

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount run-flat tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you. Refer also to New wheels and tires, page 230.

▷ The tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from your BMW center.◀

Jack mounting points

The jacking points are at the positions shown in the illustration.

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Battery replacing

⚠ Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.◀

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available.

Charging the battery

Note

⚠ Do not connect battery chargers to the sockets installed in the vehicle at the factory; otherwise you may cause damage to the battery.◀

General information

To guarantee the full service life of the battery, ensure that the battery is always properly charged.

It may be necessary to charge the battery in the following situations:

▷ If frequent short trips are taken;

▷ If the vehicle is frequently parked for more than a month.

Jump-starting terminals

Charge the battery via the connections in the engine compartment only when the engine is off. Connections, refer to Jump-starting on page 252.

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings may likewise have been lost and will have to be programmed:

▷ Time and date
These values must be updated, refer to page 82.

▷ Radio
In some cases, stations may have to be stored again, refer to page 159.

▷ Navigation system
Wait for the system to start, refer to page 151.

▷ Glass roof
It may happen that the roof can only be tilted. The system must be initialized. Please contact your BMW center.

▷ Seat and mirror memory
The positions must be stored again, refer to page 54.

▷ Inside rearview mirror with digital compass
The system must be calibrated, refer to page 115.

▷ Active steering
The system automatically initializes itself briefly during a trip. The system is deactivated during this time, refer to page 97.

Disposal of old battery

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or bring them to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always secure the battery against tipping over during transport.◀

Fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; otherwise, this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

In the glove compartment

Accessing the fuse box:

1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Remove the damper, arrow **1**, from the lower holder by applying forward pressure.
3. Disengage the glove compartment by pressing on both tabs, arrows **2**, and fold it down.

Plastic tweezers are located on the distributor box.
Information on fuse assignment can be found next to the distributor box.

Spare fuses are available at your BMW center.

After replacing a fuse, press the glove compartment upward until it engages and reattach the damper.

Giving and receiving assistance

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Emergency Request

Requirements

▷ Full preparation package mobile phone: this equipment makes it possible to send an Emergency Request even if no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.

▷ BMW Assist is activated.

▷ Radio readiness is switched on.

▷ The BMW Assist system is logged into a mobile phone network that is supported by BMW Assist.

▷ The Emergency Request system is operable.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

⚠ For technical reasons, the Emergency Request service cannot be guaranteed for the most unfavorable conditions. ◀

Subscriber contract

Upon expiration of the subscriber contract with BMW Assist, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without a workshop visit.

After the system is deactivated, it is no longer possible to make Emergency Requests.

It may be possible for a BMW center to reactivate the system after a new contract has been signed.

Sending an Emergency Request

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open.

2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button comes on.

▷ The LED comes on: the Emergency Request has been triggered.

If the circumstances allow, remain in the vehicle until the voice contact has been established.

▷ The LED flashes when the connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established.

Once the BMW Assist Response Center has received your Emergency Request, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center will be able to initiate further steps to assist you under certain conditions.

Data for determining the necessary rescue measures are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. the current position of your vehicle, if it can be determined.

▷ If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the

hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. The BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you, however.

Automatically triggering an Emergency Request

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is sent automatically immediately after a severe accident. An automatic Emergency Request is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Roadside Assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance is available by phone around the clock in many countries. You can obtain support there in the event of a breakdown.

First aid pouch

Some of the articles contained in the first aid pouch have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items in good time, if necessary.

The first aid pouch is located on the right-hand side of the trunk in a storage area.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located in a holder in the trunk lid. Press the tabs to take it out.

Jump-starting

If the car's own battery is flat, your BMW's engine can be started by connecting two jumper cables to another vehicle's battery. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Only use jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

⚠️ Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any consumers in both vehicles.

⚠️ There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

⚠️ Connect the jumper cables in the correct order to prevent sparking at the battery, which could cause injury.◀

Your BMW has a jump-starting connection in the engine compartment which acts as the battery's positive terminal, refer also to the Engine compartment overview on page . The cap is marked with +.

1. Pull the cap of the BMW jump-starting connection up to remove.

2. Attach one terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.

3. Attach the second terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.

4. Attach one terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative pole.

5. Attach the second terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at slightly increased idle speed.

2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first start attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.

4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the above connecting sequence.

If necessary, have the battery checked and recharged.

▷ Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting, towing away

⚠️ Observe the applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing vehicles.◀

⚠️ Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using a tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting must always be carried in the car. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

It is stored with the onboard vehicle tool kit underneath the floor mat in the trunk, refer to page .

⚠️ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift

the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise, the tow fitting and the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Access to screw thread

Rectangular cover panel in bumper:

Press the arrow on the cover.

Front

Rear

Being towed

⚠ Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 61; otherwise, the low-beam headlamps, tail lamps, turn signal indicators and windshield wipers may be unavailable. There is no power assist while the engine is off. Thus, braking and steering will require increased effort. Active steering is not active and it will be necessary to turn the steering wheel further.◀

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.
Changing selector lever position, refer to page 64.

⚠ Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph/70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km; otherwise, the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Sport automatic transmission with double clutch

⚠ Make sure that the parking lock P is not engaged; otherwise, the rear wheels are immobilized.
When using the car wash function, refer to page 240, make sure that after approx. 30 minutes, the parking lock P is automatically engaged and thus immobilizes the rear wheels. In the event of an electrical malfunction or if the vehicle must be towed for more than approx. 20 minutes, unlock the parking lock manually, refer to page 69.◀

⚠ When towing, do not exceed a maximum speed of 30 mph or 50 km/h and a maximum distance traveled of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

⚠ Do not lift the vehicle by a tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◀

With a tow bar

⚠ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle; otherwise, it may be impossible to maintain control.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an angle, please observe the following:

▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.

▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

⚠️ Attach the tow bar to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

With a tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

⚠️ To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Attach the tow rope to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

With a tow truck

Manual transmission and automatic transmission:

Sport automatic transmission with double clutch:

Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar, or on a flatbed.

Do not tow the vehicle with just the rear axle raised as this may cause the steering to turn.

Tow-starting

Avoid tow-starting the vehicle whenever possible; instead, jump-start the engine, refer to page 252. Vehicles with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold, vehicles with an automatic transmission or Sport automatic transmission with double clutch cannot be tow-started at all.

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 61.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch completely depressed and then slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch completely again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system and an index that will help you find information most quickly.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

Dimensions

Coupe

1 Vehicle width, with exterior mirrors: 75.6 in/1,919 mm

2 Vehicle height: 56.0 in/1,423 mm

Vehicle height, 135i: 55.4 in/1,408 mm

3 Vehicle width, without exterior mirrors: 68.8 in/1,748 mm

4 Wheelbase: 104.7 in/2,660 mm

5 Vehicle length: 172.2 in/4,373 mm

Smallest turning circle dia.: 35.1 ft/10.7 m.

Convertible

1 Vehicle width, with exterior mirrors: 75.6 in/1,919 mm

2 Vehicle height: 55.6 in/1,411 mm

Vehicle height, 135i: 54.8 in/1,392 mm

3 Vehicle width, without exterior mirrors: 68.8 in/1,748 mm

4 Wheelbase: 104.7 in/2,660 mm

5 Vehicle length: 172.2 in/4,373 mm

Smallest turning circle dia.: 35.1 ft/10.7 m.

Weights

Coupe

		128i	135i
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,134/1,875	4,255/1,930
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,211/1,910	–
▷ Sport automatic transmission with double clutch	lbs/kg	–	4,321/1,960
Load	lbs/kg	794/360	794/360
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,028/920	2,116/960
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,293/1,040	2,293/1,040
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75	165/75
Trunk capacity	cu ft/liters	13.1/370	13.1/370

Convertible

		128i	135i
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,398/1,995	4,542/2,060
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,475/2,030	–
▷ Sport automatic transmission with double clutch	lbs/kg	–	4,608/2,090
Load	lbs/kg	750/340	750/340
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,050/930	2,161/980
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,467/1,119	2,469/1,120
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	–	–
Trunk capacity	cu ft/liters	9.1-10.7/260-305	9.1-10.7/260-305

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank:	US gal/liters	approx. 14.0/53	Fuel grade: page 221
including reserve of	US gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8.0	
Window washer system			For more details: page 72
including headlamp washers	US quarts/ liters	approx. 6.3/6.0	

Short commands for the voice activation system

Vehicle equipment

In this chapter, all production, country, and optional equipment that is offered in the model range is described. For this reason, descriptions will be given of some equipment that may not be available in a vehicle, for example due to the special options or national-market version selected. This also applies to safety related functions and systems.

General information

For instructions on the voice activation system, refer to page 26.

Having the possible spoken commands read aloud: ›Voice commands‹

The following short commands are for vehicles with the voice activation system. They do not function with equipment packages that permit only the mobile phone to be operated by voice.

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Opening a music collection	›Music collection‹
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Accessing the onboard computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
Displaying phone book	›Phonebook‹
Accessing services	›Assist‹
Accessing BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Accessing ConnectedDrive	›Connected Drive‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening destination entry	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Selecting a track	›Track …‹ e.g. track 5
	or
	›C D track …‹ e.g. CD track 5
Playing back a CD	›C D on‹
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D … track …‹ e.g. CD 3 track 5
Opening the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD	›C D‹
Displaying entertainment details on the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

Music collection

Function	Command
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening a music collection	›Music collection‹
Playing back a music collection	›Music collection on‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹
Accessing Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹
AUX front	›AUX‹

Tone control

Function	Command
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Selecting a station directly	›Station …‹ e.g. National Public Radio
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up an FM station	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual‹
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Calling up a station	›Select station‹

AM

Function	Command
Calling up an AM station	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual‹

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Select satellite radio‹ e.g. channel 2

Presets

Function	Command
Opening the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset …‹ e.g. stored station 2

Telephone

Function	Command
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹

Function	Command
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Displaying the list of messages	›Messages‹
Displaying Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹

Office

Function	Command
Opening Office menu	›Office‹
Displaying current Office	›Current office‹
Displaying contacts	›Contacts‹
Displaying messages	›Messages‹
Displaying calendar	›Calendar‹
Displaying tasks	›Tasks‹
Displaying reminders	›Reminders‹

Contacts

Function	Command
Selecting a name	›Choose name‹
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening destination entry	›Enter address‹
Entering an address	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
Ending destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹

Function	Command
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
Switching on the voice instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a voice instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Switching off the voice instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic map scaling	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Changing the scale	›Map scale‹
Scale...meters	›Map scale … meters‹ e.g. map scale of 100 meters
Scale...kilometers	›Map scale … kilometers‹ e.g. split screen scale of 5 kilometers

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen, map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective	›Split screen perspective‹
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹
Expanded intersection zoom on the split screen	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹

Function	Command
Split screen scale ... meters	›Split screen scale … meters‹ e.g. split screen scale of 100 meters
Split screen scale ... kilometers	›Split screen scale … kilometers‹ e.g. split screen scale of 5 kilometers
Split screen, highlighting traffic bulletins	›Split screen, Traffic conditions‹
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹

Destination guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
Entering a new destination	›Enter address‹
Trip list	›Stored trips‹

ConnectedDrive or BMW Assist

Function	Command
Accessing BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Accessing ConnectedDrive	›Connected Drive‹
Accessing BMW Online	›B M W Online‹

Vehicle information

Function	Command
Accessing the onboard computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

Settings

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹

Function	Command
Settings on the Control Display	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit settings	›Speed‹
Opening the light settings	›Lighting‹
Opening the door lock settings	›Door locks‹
Opening profiles	›Profiles‹

Equipment

Function	Command
Opening the air conditioning settings	›Climate‹

Everything from A to Z

Index

01 40 2 914 551   ue iDrive